

959. e 14.

A NOTABLE HISTORIE
of the Saracens.

Briefly and faithfully describing the originall beginning, continuance and successe aswell of the Saracens, as also of Turkes, Doulsans, Amalukes, Assassines, Tartarians and sophians. With a discourse of their Affaires and Actes from the byrthe of Mahomet their first prophet and founder for 700 yeeres space.

VVherunto is annexed a Compendious Chronicle of all their yeerely exploits, from the sayde Mahomet's time till this present yeere of grace. 1575.

Drawen out of Augustine Curio and sundry other good Authors by Thomas Newton.

Imprinted at London by William How, for Abraham Vcale.

1575.



To the Ryghte honorable
the Lorde Charles Howarde,
Baron of Effyngham, and
Knight of the most Noble Or-
der of the Garter.

RYghte Honorable:
Callinge to remembrance
what streict accoumpt euery
Man particularlie at
the last generall Audite,
is enioyned to yeeld for time here bestow-
ed, I haue somewhat in discharge of my duty
that waye, according to the rate and mea-
sure of my small Talent, traueiled to
bringe to light for the benefite of my Coun-
treymen this historicall Discourse of Sar-
racens, Turks and other Reprobates of the
same stampe and Lyuerey, in hope that the
same to your Honour and others, of ripe
iudgement thyrstinge after such needefull
knowledge, shall bee deemed labour and time
not all together yll spent. Which matter al-
though it required the cunninge hande of a
skilfuller Workeman, for the better polis-
shing and bringing thereof into good frame
and

The Epistle

and order, yet the diligent endeou're of
 suche as doe their vttermoste seemeth (in
 the meane while) not to bee reiected. For
 God bestoweth his Gifts and Benefites di-
 uerselye (some haue more and some lesse)
 whiche although by Arithmeticall pro-
 portion they seeme very vnequall, yet beinge
 Geometricallye examyned, respected and
 waighed, they iumpe in a most euen equalty.
 Herein as in a Myrrour is set down, how,
 when & by whom, this pestilent Generation
 was first set abroche, what successe in their
 Affaires euer synce they haue had, and if
 wee wyll not by others harmes take warning,
 what curtesye is to bee looked for at their
 hands, whē and where soeuer they can espye
 any occasiō or oportunitie to put in practise
 their bloody tyranny. They were (indeede)
 at the first very far of from our Clyme &
 Region, and therefore the lesse to be fea-
 red, but now they are euen at our doores and
 ready to come into our Houses, yf our pe-
 nitent heartes doe not the sooner procure at
 the mercifull bandes of God, an vnytie,
 peace.

Dedicatorie.

peace and concord among the Princes, Pos-
 tentates and People of that litle porcion of
 Chrystendome yet left, which through diuis-
 sion, discord and ciuile dissention hath from
 time to time enticed and brought this Baby-
 lonian Nabugadnezar and turkish Pharao
 so neere vnder our noses. The pitifull state
 wherof although your L. is not now to learn
 yet for others sake, not so rype in Turkishe
 garboyles, I know your Honour according
 to the wonted generositie of your noble na-
 ture wil at my hands cherefully accept, as an
 earnest peny of my loyal heart to your L.
 most addicted: whō I beseech God with
 that moste vertuous and honorable
 Ladie your wife to blesse with
 all spirituall benedictions,
 prosperous health and
 daylye increase of
 much Honour.

At London the xii. of May. 1575.

Your good Lordships
 most humble at Commandment,

Thomas Newton.

The Authours

Preface.

MAny a time and often, considering and debating with my selfe, the actuarde course of this changeable world, among other things I haue bene greatly desirous to know, what the very & chief cause should be, of the subuersion and ruine, from time to time, of al mightie kyngdomes: And againe of the setting vp and aduancement of manie obscure persones of base degree and parentage to most high honors and dignities. For when I thoroughly consider and call to remembrance the alteration and decay of the Romane Empire, and the manifold calamities that haue happened to noble and puyssaunt kingdomes in times past, I well see, that dissolute life, ambition and discord of Rulers amonge themselves hath from time to time bene the chief & originall cause thereof. Insomuch that by reading oue of olde Monumentes and Histories, thinges long agoe atchieued and done. I perceaue many Empires haue ben planted and constituted, many Nations subdued, many Kingdomes with long continuance firmly established and most assured peate and tranquillitie among the Communaltie conserued by temperaunce and sobriety, but chiefly and specially

The Preface.

specially by ciuill concord and mutuall amity.
 Therefore, both reason, & dayly examples
 enforce me to think, that Wealth, Riches,
 strength and skilfull policie in warlike as-
 sayes without concord and goodwyl of the
 people hurteth many times, but profiteth
 almost neuer. Whereas concord and bene-
 uolence (euen without wealth and rychesse)
 be of great force and of themselves able to
 doo very much. Therefore, they which
 neglected the sauegard, quietnesse and com-
 moditie of their subiectes (whereby, good-
 wyl is both purchased and also nourished,)
 and wholly yeelded themselves to Ambition
 and desire of souerainty (bestowing al their
 studies and cogitations onely to enrich and
 bying themselves to hye estate among their
 owne people, desiring rather to be feared of
 them then of their enemies) were in the end
 vnprofitable to themselves and perniti-
 cious to their countrey. Contrarywise, they
 that so arming themselves with the vnsayned
 loue and goodwyl of their owne people and
 subiectes, that they might both be tenderly
 and intirely beloued of them, and also bee
 terrible and dreadfull to the enemy abroad:
 those (I say) were they, which notably bene-
 fitted both themselves and their common
 wealth. And if we would peruse and rip
 vp the ancient beginnings of al Kingdoms,
 and thoroughly consider their fyrst originall,

The Preface.

wee shall finde that so many of them as long
 flourished, were by most honest Artes and
 wayes at the fyrst gotten, and by the best or-
 ders of gouernment constituted. For it is wel
 enough knowne, that at the beginning, the
 name of a king (which alwaies was a name
 moste holle and venerable) was geuen and
 attributed to those that had done best ser-
 uice and been most meritorious to their coun-
 trie, whom the people for their common pro-
 fite and btylytie created Kinges and Soue-
 raignes ouer them. For when as the sacred
 worde of God was not yet amonge men ac-
 knowledged, no religyon reuerenced, nor a-
 ny ciuill order regarded, when no man tooke
 any respect to lawfull matrimonie, or to any
 certayne procreation of Children, and the
 due administratio of iustice and lawes with
 the profites therof not once heard of, much
 lesse executed: when men after a brutishe
 sorte lyued abroad in the woods and open
 fieldes, wholly drowned in errour and blind
 ignorance, abusing their strength and pow-
 er onely to the satisfyinge of their owne sen-
 suall affections and beastlye lustes: what
 mans power was so great, or who was a-
 ble with all the strength he had to gather to-
 gether these sauage and rude persones lurk-
 ing in woods & cabines abrod, into one fe-
 lowship: & to perswade the to be obedient &
 confozmable to hys comandements. Certes

The Preface.

wee muste needes confesse, that this reducing of them from their fyrste vnmanerly rudenesse, to honeste order and comelinesse, was not brought to passe by force and violence, but by wisdom, equity, iustice, courteous dealing and liberall benefites bestowed vpon them all generallye, whereby the hartes of the people were tauished and as it were with a certain bond of beneuolence allured to haue them in admiration, and to beare vnto them an earnest zeale of duty, full good wyll. And although at the fyrste, they seemed after a sort (because of the strangenesse thereof) to be halfe vnwyllynge, yet at length by meanes of benefites receaued, and other liberal curtesies, together with an vpright equitie in every respect obserued, they brought them into order and ready to consent vnto euery thinge that seemed honest and profitable. By these politike meanes, Saturne the annientest founder of Rome reigned firste in Armenia, and escaped the conspiracye and force of the mightiest kings of Babilon by nothinge so much, as by his iustice and equitie and the assured goodwills of his owne people, and by their onely help, fleeing the furie and crueltie of Jupiter, obtained and waime a new kingdome in Italy. By this way, Romulus the other founder of Rome, of a poore and braggart shepheard, was aduanced to the degree of a king.

In

The Preface.

In lyke manner were Numa and Tarquinus Priscus of straungers and priuate persons, made Kinges in the same place. By such good will and affection of his Souldiers, Alexander the Great conquered all the East. By concord, the Greeques victoriously augmented and enlarged their dominions: by concord, the common wealth of the Carthaginians grew to bee moste mightye: the same concord made the Romanes, Lordes ouer al Lands, and conquerours of al foraine nations. In this bond of concord the Sarracens a weake and slender rable of theyrants at the fyrst, being ioynd and linked together, ouercame and possessed verie many prouinces belöging to the Romane empire: by this meanes the power of the Turks at the fyrst & ever since hath increased. But Insolency, Ambition and Disoord hath ben the subuersion of all kingdomes, mightye Empires and populous common wealthes. For when princes (neglecting and forsaking those trades and waies by which their kingdomes were at the fyrst constituted) thinke Money and wealth, to be the chief defence, and as it were the sinewes and stayes of their kingdomes, when any secret hatred and harte burninge enkindleth betweene them and their people, then do they hazard and endaunger both themselves their Royalties and subiectes to the spoyle of the enemye.

B iii

mye.

The Preface.

my. for nature hath thus ordayned, that as we feele & perceiue others to be affected towards vs, we also are affected towards the: & Plato his saying is well known concerning the same matter who writeth that as the princes & rulers in a common welth are, such commonly be the people and Citizens of the same. Therefore no man ought to marueile, why those Princes which set more by their own private lucre and gayne then by the publique commoditie of their Realme, are many times but slenderly beloued of their subiectes: and that all their Officers vnder them by their euill example, are more ready to enriche their owne Coffers then to further the common wealth of their country. Thus mens hearts being diuersly bent and their good wills alienated one from another, the common wealth consequently goeth to wracke & confusion. These were the causes, why the Emperour was first translated from the Chaldeyes to the Assyrians, from the Assyrians to the Medians, from the Medians to the Persians and last of all from the Persians to the Macedonians. Discord was the overthrow and dispatching of that famous and large Monarchy left by Alexander the Great, while his successours (not content every man with his owne Territory) quarrelled among themselves for the whole Monarchy. Discord abated and tamed the whole power and

The Preface.

and common wealth of the Greeques: by discord and ciuill warres, the Romane state was destroyed and brought almoste to nothing: and agayne the ciuill diuision of the Greeques amonge themselves was the only cause that the flourishing empire of Constantinople was brought vnder the miserable yoke and slavery of a Nation moste barbarous. Discord was the better vndooing and defacing of the Sarracens Empire, as in this history it shall playnly appeare: and the same plague doth at this day so infect and trouble all Christendome that I feare (and I beseech God my feare may be without effect) least wee shall to late rue and lament either the better subuersion or at least, the miserable oppression thereof. What do wee meane therefore seeing Ambition and her daughter Discord haue euer bene the causes of so great calamities and mischieues, why doo we thus runne headlong vpon the Swordes point, and cut one anothers throat: why haue we such deligh in ciuill warres and domesticall murder: why doo wee not (alas for pittie that our mindes should be so much blinded and bewitched) lay asyde all private grudges and controuersies which ought rather to be decided by equitie and the infallible lawe of God, then with war and effusion of Christian blood: why doo wee not rather bende all

The Preface.

all our force and power against the professed enemies of Christianitie, & cōteinners & destroyers of all humanitie, religion and learning: These warres (I say) which are deuided into many partes and factions among vs, one conspiringe an others bane and thirsting after his brothers blood, will in the end bring all Christendome to vtter ruine and wofull desolation. Which if they would ioyne in one and liue together in Christian league, no doubt, Constantinople might be agayn recovered and annexed to the Romane Empire, Grecia and a great number of Christian cuntries now luyng in perpetual moorning, & pitiful slavery might bee deliuered out of the thraldome of vn-sufferable tyrants, that Sathanical crew of Turkish iurdens might be expelled and driuen to trudge out of all Europa, and the sincere profession of christian religion there estones planted and truly acknowledged. Paraduventure some will cast doubtess and object, that this our mortal foe is not neere hand, but must be sought out (as aforesaid) in farre countreys, that they must passe sundry aduentures ouer many perillous Seas, that they must goe a great way beyonde all Europa, and set foote into ASIA and Syria by daungerous places, vnknoone waies suspect countreies and fierce people. But behold, euen at our doores and ready to come
into

The Preface.

into our houses, we haue this arrogant and bragging helhound, triumphyng ouer vs, laughyng at our misfortunes, reioycing to see vs thus to lye together by the eares, and gapyng in hope shortly to enioy our goods and Seigniories. O dolefull and daungerous times. O corrupt and wylfull maners. In times past, one Peter an Heremite beyng but a poore seely soule, was able with exhortyng wordes and orations to perswade three hundred thousand men to put on armour against the Sarracens, and to procure innumerable Gentlemen & Potentates with all the power they were able to make, to march against them, & to bring them as far as into Asia, where they valiantly conquered and wanne from the Sarracens many of their Kingdomes and Provinces. For the people in those daies were of themselves so willing to aduenture their liues in Christes quarell against the blasphemers of his name, that without any spend or wages (godly zeale so pricked them forward) they tooke in hand such long Expeditions and weary voyages: and while Kinges and Rulers were geuen either to rest and riotte, or els busyed with ciuill and domesticall warres, they carried their weapons into farre Regions to fight against the Infidels and miscreant people. But now wheras our most mightye and the same most vnnmercifull Enemye the
C great

The Preface.

great Turke is ready every day to spyl our bloud and to waik our confusion, possessing & hauing already vnder his iurisdiction many of Christian Provinces, to some others laying batterye and siege: and hoppyng ere it be long, to spoyle & ouertunne the rest: and albeit that Christendome hath Maximilian an Emperour moſte prudent and wyſe, yet neuertheleſſe, by the ſiniſter perſwaſions, and deuiliſh counſailes of ſome ſeditious perſonnes w^{ch} ſlea and kill one an other. Which thing I conſidering, and greatly lamentyng the ſtate wherein Chriſtendome preſentlye ſtandeth, albeit that I being but one man, and ſuch a one, that lackyng both ſtrength & health, am able in perſon to doe no good in the exploites of martiall affaires: yet ſo the intent I might ſtirre vp and kinde a deſire and good wyll in many others which are better hable, to repulſe this our common danger, by ſuch examples as are in hiſtories regiſtered and wryten, I haue heere taken vpon mee orderlye to deſcribe and ſet out the Actes of the Saracens and Turkes, buried almoſt in the ruſty dongeon, of cankerd obliuion: that we ſeeyng by what meanes and ſeights they haue increaſed, and by what ſolies and ouerſightes our power hath diminished, may now at length decline and eſchue the lyke. This whole Hiſtoyre breeflye comppylinge the whole Diſcourſe of their raignes

The Preface.

raignes and conqueſtes, collected aſwell out of many Greeke, Conſtantinopolitan, and Latine Authours, as out of the Chronicles of the Arabians & Moores, is deuided into three Bookes. The firſte containeth the natiuitie, education, raigne and continuance of doctyng Mahomet and the beginning of the Saracens, with the ſucceſſe and increaſe of their Empire euen tyll it was at the higheſt, for two hundredth yeeres ſpace. The ſeconde is continued from the fyrſt indynation tyll the beginning of the deſtruction and laſte ende thereof, contayninge alſo the ſpace of two hundredth yeeres. The third breefly compprehendeth the ſinall end of it, and the original beginning of the Turkiſhe Empire, (which ſucceeded the Saracenicall Domination) till Othoman the firſt Emperour of Turkes which intreateth of their acts, for the ſpace of three hundredth yeeres. So that this Hiſtoyre taketh his beginning at the byrth of Mahomet, which was ſine hundred & ſixty yeeres after the incarnation of our Sauour Chriſt, and reacheth vnto ſixtye one thouſand & three hundredth. As for the ſeuerall Acts of Othoman and other Emperours that ſucceeded hym, we haue heere omitted, becauſe they be ſeuerally wrytten and deſcribed by many others. But of that argument which wee in theſe three Books declare and comprehend,

C ii

there

The Preface.

there is none, neither amonge the Latines nor yet the Greeques (that I know) which hath compiled and made any seuerall Historye. Which labour of mine, if I may vnderstand to be well lyked and allowed, by the iudgment of the honest and learned sorte, I wyll heerafter aduenture to take in hande other matters of greater waight and importance.



The first Booke.

1

Wherin is contained their first beginning and originall, with the successe and encreasing of theyr Empire.



I Am purposed to write an Historie concerning the Actes of the Saracens, atchieued atwel in the East as in the West partes of the world: first because they were greate and renoumed ouer the face of the whole Earth and bzought all things out of godd state into tumultuous bzoyl and confuse disorder, and also because this powver of theirs encreased, thzough the disorde and dissention of the Christians: that we thereby taking example, may plainely perceiue and learne what boldnes and strength, our ciuill warring and inward variance among our selues giueth to the aduersaries and foes of Christianitie. And that we no longer in this sorte offer our thzoyates willingly to be cut by them, which desire nothing moze then our blood and destruction. For first of al, this is well ynough knowen, that the Romane Emperre (which thzoughe concozde temperance and balaunties surmounted and grew to such high spaiestie and estate, that all nations almost in the world were obedienciaries and subiect vnto it) when the Citizens being once lulled in to much ease, and dzonken with superfluitie of riches and wealth began to addit themselves to riot and ambition (the verie causes that ouerthzew it, when it once began to decline with his owne sway and bignesse, and many strived for title of the Crowne) receiued at the handes of none, such annoyance and calamitie as of the

C. lii.

Sara-

The first Booke

Saracens. For although the Gothes most unmercifully and beastly destroying and making hauocke of the auncient monuments of the Romane valiaunce and worthinesse, were the first that triumphed ouer them, being the people which earst had vanquished and conquered all other nations: Although Attila King of the Hunnes, like a most raging swifte streame spoiled, ouerrunne and destroyed all where euer he came, from the Rhiphean to the Pyrene Mountaines: Although the Lombards occupied and forcibly enjoyed a great portion of Italy, as the Frankes breaking out of Germanie into Gallia also did: yet their raignes and dominations in straunge Countreys either continued not long, or else at least wise, leaving vnder a more gentle and reasonable Climate, chaunged their former conditions, acknowledged religion and the August Emperre of the soueraine Cæsars. But the Saracens because they woulde seme to be subuersers and ouerthrowers both of the Romane Empire and of all Christian religion also, violently breaking and issuing out of Arabia, despoiled and wasted the most noble parts of Asia, which in so many sharpe stormes and troubles some garboyles of most fierce people euer before remained free and vntouched, quite abolishing in the same all the studies of good letters and liberall sciences and (which is most of all) utterly defacing and inhibiting the true worshipping of God and Christian religion. And not only infected the Countreies of Asia but also almoste all Affrica and the moste parte of Spaine with barbarous rites, mystic errorrs, blinde ignorance, and with a most deuillish, absurde and detestable religion of their owne. And from thence making sundry Roads into Italy, Greece and Fraunce lamentably afflicted and laid wast the same, and by continuance & sufferance haue planted such a huge Emperre, & at this day (being in Anno. 1575. that is to say. 900. yeres and aboue since it first beganne, it dayly threate

Of the Saracen Historie. 2

threateneth our confusion and is dreadfull to all Christians. For the Turkes who now enjoy all their dominions, haue receiued from them as next heires vnto them, both their Religion and Kingdomes: and yet to this day in Affrica, some of the mere syne of the Saracens be of great power and authoritie. But before we go any further to the declaration & discouerie of their Ants & gouernment, we must firste a little speake of the originall Pedagrew of the first founder and authour of their damnable Secte. All Arabia is deuised into thre partes, wherof one is called Petreia, hauing his name of an olde auncient towne in it, called Petra, the second is called Deserta, and the thirde Felix or Sabæa. Petreia hath on the West side Egypt and is separated from it, firste by the Mount Casius and then by wast wilderness: on the North, it hath Iurie and Palestina: on the East, Arabia, Deserta: and on the South the innermost part of arme of the Arabian Goulph called Sinus Arabicus. Deserta, wherin the Citie Scene (otherwise called Scenich) stonde, boundeth on the South vpon the Mountaines of Arabia Felix, on the North, it hath Mesopotamia, and on the East the River Euphrates. Arabia Felix runneth a long betwene the two bosomes of the Sea, the Arabian and the Persian, being almost on euerie side enuironed with water like an Island. It hath on the North Petreia and Deserta, on the West the Arabian Gulph, on the East the Persian Gulph, and on the South the redde Sea. I finde that these Regions were inhabited by foure kindes of people, that is to wit, by the auncient Arabians, which were descended from Arabus, Sabus and Petreus the sonnes of Cures and the pephewes of Cham, of whom the thre Arabies had their names as Arabia Deserta of Arabus, Arabia, Sabæa (which is also called Felix) of Sabus and Petreia of Petreus (as witnesseth Berolus Chaldeus.) Then of the Ismaelites, which were descended from

Arabie.

Arabians are the offspring of Ismael.

The first Booke

Africa.

Eſau inhabit-
ed part of
Arabie.

from Iſmaell the ſonne of Abraham by his handmaybe Agar, of whom a parte of the Countrey, called Agarena and the Town Agarenum (which in Strabo are corruptly read Ararena and Agranum) had their firſt beginning and denomination: as that part called Petreia was called Nabathæa of Nabath, & the people Cædrei of Cædar the ſonnes of the ſame Iſmael. The thirde people came and deſcended of the ſonnes of Keturah, Abrahams ſecond wiſe, which poſſeſſed a great part of Arabia Feelix, ſpecially that portion which lyeth toward the redde ſea. They alſo made Colonies and vnder Cities in Lybia, and peopled the ſame with inhabitants of their owne lineage and nation, whereupon afterward (as Joſephus witneſſeth) the Countrey was called Affrica, of Ophre the ſonne of Mandanes, and ſpeweto to Abraham by his wiſe Keturah. The fourth kinde, toke their originall beginning of Eſau the ſonne of Iſaac, who inhabited the partes of Arabia Petrejana into Iurie, and of him the people in Arabia Petreia, are of Plinie and Ptolomeus called by ſ name of Saraceni. For Iſaac, Eſau his father, was the ſonne of Abraham by his wiſe Sara. And they were called Saraceni, both becauſe they might thereby ſhew and teſtifie, that they were deſcended of the ſonne of Sara, who was Iſtaſſe, and not of Agar the handmaid as the Iſmaelites were: and alſo that they might be diſcerned and known from the Iewes, who alſo had the ſame parentes and were proceeded out of the ſame ſtocke and Progenie. Among al theſe, the people Scenice which inhabited Arabia Deſerta, were moſt valiaunt and warlike, hauing no habitation nor houſes to dwell in, but wandred abroade & lay in Tentcs in the open fieldes. Theſe ſolently bragged and made their auaunt, that they were of moſt auncientie, and contended with all others for the nobilitie of their race. Where aide and helpe, the Romane Emperours in their warres oftentimes vſed.

Of the Saracen Historie. 3

vſed. The Arabians euer had many ordinaunces and Rites, ſuch as the Hebrewes had, and do yet to this day retaine and keepe the ſame: for (as Herodotus and Diodorus two auncient Hiſtoriographers affirme) they euer vſed circumciſiõ, and kept the ſame order of their Tribes and families that the Iewes did: and account it a heynous offence that a woman ſhould be married to a man of any other Tribe and familie then ſhe her ſelfe is, and likewise for a man to take to wiſe a woman of another lineage. They inuolablie keepe the nobilitie of their race and Pedagrew, ſo that none but of the nobleſt ſort ſhould raigne ouer them. Neither hath one the regiment and gouernance ouer all, but euerie Tribe to haue their proper King, after whom, his owne ſonne ſhould not ſucceede in the kingdome, but the firſt that was bozne of the ſeede of a right noble man and woman, after he were ſaluted King, was kept and brought vp as heyze apparant to the Crowne. A people naturally and generally geuen to thefte and robberie, as all others commonly are which dwell in hoate Countreies. Many kindes of religion was vſed among them: for ſome worſhipped Chriſt, of whole nature, deitie, & omnipotencie at that time, whence this our Hiſtorie taketh his beginning (as in all other places at that time alſo) there were diuerſe ſects and opinions. Some obſerued the Rites and Ceremonies of the Iewes: ſome honoured the Sunne and Moone, ſome certain trees, ſome Serpentes, ſome a Towre called Alcaba, which they beleued and thought was builded by Iſmael, ſome one thing and ſome another. In the time of theſe ſo great garboyles and diuerſities in religions, and among ſuche blockiſhe and rude people, was Mahomet bozne at Itra- Mahomet.
ripe a towne of Arabia Deſerta, belonging to Mecca, being by his fathers ſide of the auncient line of Corah the ſonne of Eſau, or (as ſome ſay) of Cædar the ſonne of Iſmael, in the moneth of Februarie, and in the yere after the

The first Booke

the incarnation of Christ (as they say) 560. whose father was named Abedela & his mother Emma a Lew bozne, both poze folkes and of bale parentage. By meanes whereof (his father being an Ismaelite and his mother a Lew) he was in his tender age by them instructed and taught both the rites of the Hebrewes and the manner of worshipping that the Gentiles used. His Parentes dyed while he was but yet a tender and younge ladde, so that then he was committed to the charge and custodie of one Salutelib, his vncke by the fathers syde. And whē he came to mans stature he was taken prisoner of the Scenites, which were (as befoze was shewed) the fiercest and warlikest people in all that Countrey, and lyued altogether by robberies, and by them was he solde to a ryche Cobbe one Abdimoneples, an Ismaelite. Who quickly perceiving his prompt wit and thoroughly vnderstanding his impudent nature thought him to be a fit instrument to make his factour into other Cuntries about his traffique of merchandize, and so used oftentimes to send him out of Palestina where he dwelte, into Egypt. Which trade of life, Mahomet the space of many yeres exercising, gotte great acquaintance and crepte highly in fauour with the Hebrews, Christians and Gentiles. This Mahomet was of a meane stature, bigge headed, somewhat browne complexioned, cherefully countenaunced and liuely coloured, a long bearde, and yet not hoare: because allwayes as it beganne to waxe graye, with oyntmentes he altered it: his visage and looke was graue and posstly, pretending a kynde of Palestie ioynd with gentleness and curtesie, his legges very well proportioned, his bodie in goyng or monyng pleasaunt and gentle, and lyke (as they terme it) to the course of a styl runnyng Ryuer, in talke verie curteous, in mynde and body both stoute, stronge and venturous, quicke and prompt of witte, but the same (as Saluit witeth of Catiline) wicked and disposed

Of the Saracen Historie. 4

disposed to all mischief, bolde, hardie, and suche a one that cared for no perilles. Whereof he gaue once a manifest example, for being mounted vpon a maruelous fierce and unfamed Horse (in the presence and sight of sundrie his friendes) he so spurred and galloped him, that all the beholders, seeing him in suche great perill, earnestly desired him to alight. Vnto whom with very amiable countenance and pleasaunt language, he answered, that the Horse was lyke vnto the Sea, doyng them thereby to vnderstande, that he toke no lesse pleasure and delectation in that praucing then if he were in a Shippe vpon the Sea. Also he was fickle mynded and double in all his doynges, as the infinite rable of Lawes one cleane contrarying another, by him made, doe manifestly witnesse: whiche thyng caused great varietie and diuerse sortes of sectes in his Religion: he was also a depe counterfeytor and dissembler in euery matter, but by nature verie eloquent withall.

His ambitious and haultie mynde, gaped with out measure. after promotion and authoritie. In so much that consydering in his mynde this great varietie of Sectes, he was merueilously enflamed with a desire to establishe and make one manner of religion, and to take vnto him as well the Soueraigntie of Emperre, as also of diuine honour. Whereof he was put in greate hope, by reason of the great sedition and discorde of the Christians, the corruption of manners, and the want of warlike discipline. Moreover he was grealy animated by the peruerse and wretched Counsell of one Sergius a Monk, who being exiled and expelled out of Constantinople, for maintaining the Heresie of the Arrians fled into Arabie, and used oftentimes to come to the house of Abdimoneples

D.ij.

neples

The first Booke.

neples, Mahometers maister, and entirely loued Mahomet for the singular dexteritie that he conceived to be in his wit and towardnes. Wherefore asone as his maister Abdimoneples was dead, leauing behind him no Childzen, his wife Hadigia, being then wedow, a woman of fyftie yeres of age, and lesse sole heyze of all her husbandes Landes, Goods and Cattells, toke her seruauant Mahomet to husband. Now, being in possession of the wedow and all her substance & by meanes thereof growen to great wealth, he often fell grouelous on the ground, foaming and froathing at the mouth (for he had the falling sickness) and laye in a horrible extasie or distraction of minde, which his wife toke very heauily and cursed her fortune, in that she had so lothsomely matched her selfe. She therfore to appeale her griefe and to make her from great agonie to leape to soaine ioye, tolde her that the same happened vnto him by the operation of the Spirit of God himselfe, who appeared vnto him and reuealed certaine things, which he should pronounce and shewe to the people, touching the lawe of Moses and of Christ. For (quod he) our mortall bodies being subiect to corruption are not hable to sustaine and abyde the glorious and glittering sight of God, whereby his bodie was in a manner at such times bereft and seperated from his mind. Which wordes the olde trotte beleuing, as she that tenderly loued him for his lustie courage and beautifull age, beganne now not to loue him as a husband, but to worship and reuerence him as a holy man and a diuine Prophecie highly in Gods fauour, and to blaze his holines abroad among her Companions and Colippes. In so much that when she dyed, she not onely left him wealthie in goods and possessions (for she made him heyze of all) but also in great veneration and credite among the common people for an opinion of sanctitie which was thought to be in him. For which cause, Buback the chiefe and in greatest authoritie

Of the Saracen Historie. 5

rite among all of that parte of Arabie, and of the same Tribe that Mahomet was, gaue his daughter Aissa to him in marriage, when he was but yet thirtie yeres of age. Buffed by with pryde because of this new affinitie, and for the great abundance of wealth left vnto him by his other wife, he openly professed himselfe to be the messenger of God and a Prophecie, and to teach the people a new kind of religion, patched and gathered together out of the erroneous Schismes and hereticall dreames of all Sectes. For he taught and commaunded Circumcision, Baptisme, and abstinence from Swines fleshe & wyne. He instituted a generall fast to be kept one whole month in the yere, and that no meate for that space shoulde be eaten in the day tyme, but onely in the night. He affirmed, that there were but three Prophetes, that is to wit, himself, Moses and Christ, and that Christ was not God, with an innumerable rable of most blasphemous opinions contained in his filthy Alcorane. Which assertions and opinions were of many at the first derided & flouted at, in so much that they accounted him no better the lunatique and distraught of his right wittes. But when that he had perswaded and allured all his Allyantes and the familie of Buback which boze great sway and authoritie, yea and many of the common people also to credite and leane to his Secte, the Magistrates of Mecca, perceiuing that this new dosage and commotion would breede a scab in the common wealth, if the inconuenience like to ensue thereby, were not speedily prevented, and the impudencie of the man by rigour repressed, (for he daundersly would inueigh and openly raile vpon Princes) determined with them selues, to lay handes vpon him and to put him to death. Mahomet hauing vnderstanding of their intentes and mindes, fled out of Mecca: whom many of his Kinsfolkes, Allies, Friends and Clientes, (who were thoroughly perswaded that he was such a one in deede, as

Alcorane is
a Booke
concerning
Mahomettes
Law.

D. iij.

he

The first Booke

he had professed and would (same to bee) folowed. And from this yere, which was after the Natinitie of our Lord and Saviour Christ. 593. yeres, the Arabians do reckon their yeres: calling this, the yere of Legira, which is to say the yere of flight or transmigration. Mahomet therefore seeing such a great multitude to fauour and sticke to him, putting moze trust in his power then he did before, made vnto them an Oracion, in effect as foloweth.

Oracion of Mahomet.

How earnest I haue bene and what desire I haue alwayes had to proclaim, aduance and publishe that law, which hath ben vnto me reuealed by the Archangell and Messenger of Almighty God Gabriel, with commaundement to teach the same to all moztall wyghtes, both God himselfe knoweth and you most deare friendes can witness. For I neuer spared any labour, neuer refused any daunger, neuer any miseries or perillous extremitie, where I thought my painfull trauaile might be auailable or redound to the benefite and soules health of all people, and where without disturbance and molestation I might conueniently execute the charge and office to mee committed and enioyned from the mouthe of God. All which I haue done to this ende, that I myght reclayne, and call home the people runnyng a stray from their wicked wayes, to a holy & sincere integritie of life: and out of the dongeon of Hell, (whither they runne headlonge,) bring them backe into the ioyes of the celestiall Kingdome: following herein the steppes and bountifullnes of God him selfe, whose message and ministerie we in earth do execute. Who when as all mankind through Adams transgression and fault, was suspected and fallen into the handes of the Deuill, yet of his mere mercy vouchsafed to deliuer and saue his people, as before he had promised to our father Abraham: that is to wit, by appoynting vnto them a law, whereby they might obtaine euery lasting

Of the Saracen Historie. 6

lasting lyfe and saluation. And therfore first he sent Moses, to lay the first foundations and beginnynges of this doctrine, and to call them for feare of euerlastyng payne, and damnation, to a newnesse and amendment of lyfe. But when the Lawe of Moses little profited that way, he sent Iesus Christ, by gentler wayes and meanes to allure and wyne them, and to perswade them to lyue in the seruite and obedience of God. Now, mankind being againe so much depraued and gone a strae, that there is no certaine nor constant Religion among them, no discipline, no order nor honest maners, but all out of square and folye: he hath enioyned me (whom euen from the beginning of the world he had made choyse of and predestinated for that purpose) to this office and function, that I should recure extreme euilles with extreme remedies, and with fire and sword cut of, all iniquitie and make haue of all them that once should dare to againe say or open their mouth against this law: & that I should enlarge the Kingdome of God & constitute a moze sacred & a moze imperiall comon wealth on earth, then euer any hath heretofore ben, for who is so blind, which seeth not, that vnlesse we (who God hath appointed to y office) do set to our helping handes to redresse these so great mischies, all mankind shall shortly perishe: for mans nature withoute a Lawe (which in so great varietie and licentiousnes of life can be none nor stand in any force) must nedes most grievously sinne and offende. But howe shall we make and constitute any holisome Lawe to them that are unwilling to lyue vnder any, and despise all godly order? What spightfull reproches and slanderous reportes, we that are carefull and diligent to accomplish the Commission and commaundemente of Almighty God, do sustayne at theyr hands, you most louing friendes and companions haue seene, and howe they pursue after vs, as after wylde Beastes to haue our innocent blood.

But

The first Booke

But happie are you and blessed, whom God hath chosen, to be as ministers and helpers vnto me in the exploits, and atchieuing of these so great mysteries and assayes, whose diuine will it is, that you should not only be partakers & Coheires with mee of eternal felicitie in the lyfe to come, but also here in this world shoulde bee enriched with great wealth & possessions, the which vndoubtedly if you shew your selues men and constantly persist in faith you shall shortly enjoy, by subduing innumerable Nations and conquering most wealthy Countries. For (vndoubtedly) it is the godd will and pleasure of God, that all those Countries and heapes of wealth, shall be yours, which now wicked men, enemies and aduersaries to this law doe wrongfully possesse. That all these things shall thus happely succede, both the wickednesse of our aduersaries, which God will not suffer any longer to escape unpunished, and your trustie ayde and valiauntnes, (most worthy friendes and felowes) yea and the most infallible oracles of Almighty God do put vs in hope most assured. Wherefore if you desire to be partakers of the kingdome of Heauen, and of so great rychesse and glozy upon Earth, it is mete and expedient that you all sweare, and do hoinage vnto me, that must be your Captaine and Kingleader.

When he had thus made an ende, the chiefe Princes and Rulers of the people and namely Zaid the Sonne of Zuzara, Aomar and all the rest one after another with their swordes drawn, promised by a solemne Oth to allow of none other law, but that which Mahomet should make: in the defence and setting out whereof, they then and there protested, at all assayes when neede should require, to spend their life and bloud. This ended, Mahomet againe commaunding them to keepe silence, knæled down on his knæes a pretie while, as though he had patterned ouer som mumbling meditations, & afterwards with a loude

Of the Saracen Historie. 7

loude voyce uttered these wordes folowing.

Now (most couragious champions) make your selues readie to battaile looke that you want neither weapons nor stomacke to wyne our purpose withall, we haue the victorie most sure already in our handes. Behold the things which you haue often desired and wished for, rychesse, Glozy, Renowne and perpetual felicitie are before our eyes. God hath set the before you as rewardes for your valiant and victorious seruice: your owne valiance, the excellencie of the cause, and all the things aboue named ought moze to stirre vp your hartes and picke you forward then any Oracion that I can make.

After he had thus spoken, he appointed tenne Capitaines ouer the people, chosen out of the noblest in byrth and chiefe in dignitie among the rest, and such as were allyed vnto him by marriage, and them did he appoint into Ensignes and Bands. The names of which capitaines were these: Vbequar, Omar, Ozmen, Alifre, Talau, Azubeir, Zadin, Zaedine & Abuobeid, & so he marched in battail aray toward the Citie of Mecca. The Pagistrates of the Citie vnderstanding thereof, made out a power against him, which encountering with Mahomet his host, discomfited and put them all to flight. Wherefore for the space of foure yeres after, Mahomet neuer durst make any profer to besiege that Citie any moze. Notwithstanding, he ceased not continually with Oracions in open fieldes and Countrey villages, to moue and stirre vp the people to sedition, by meanes whereof he also caused certain byrdes and tumultes among the Scenites, which acknowledged for their Lordes and Soueraignes the Romane Emperours. When once againe he marched with a freshe supply of more souldiours against Mecca, where he was againe repulsed and myssed his purpose: and two yeres after he againe the thirde time attempted the same and sped as he had done twise before. In this

C.

meane

The first Booke

meane while, Heraclius the Emperour perceiuing the youthfull fozt of the Scenites to begin mutyne & seditiō, for better quietting therof, dispatched & sent a great number of the (under the coulour of warfare) into far Countries. There reigned at y time in Persia a King named Cosdroes, who had married y daughter of Maurice y Emperour called Marie, at whose instāce & persuasiō he was contented to be Baptized: and so long as his father in law liued, vsed himself most friendly toward all y Christians & was vnto them very courteous & liberall. But after that he was traiterously slaine by Phocas, who succeeded hym in the Empire, Cosdroes detestling y disloyal treacherie & falsehood of them which had elected such a wicked man, as Phocas, polluted with the bloudie murther of his liege Loyde and Soueraigne to be their Prince, reputing them as Accessories to the same horrible acte and conspiracie, prepared a great armie at the instigation and procurement of his wife to reuenge the death of his said father in Law. And the more was he emboldened so to do, because he wel enough perceived Heraclius (for Phocas was slaine within a while after) to be altogether lulled in securitie and to lye quietly at home without attempting any thing against the Barbarous Nations which with fire, & sword on every side despoiled Italie and the Romane Emperye. Whereupon with a huge and populous armie he enuaded the frontiers of the Emperye, and subduyng by fyne fozte all the South partes of Asia, entred into Egypt and took Alexandria: and yet not contented, went further and conquered Carthage, with all Africa. And when he had taken good order for the fortifying of that Countrey with strong garrisons, he retyred backe to Alexandria, waiking Syria and Iurie. Heraclius being not a little nettled with these iniurious dealings of Cosdroes, sent vnto him for peace: which when he coulde not obtaine at his handes, rather enforced and driven by necessitie, then

drawing

Of the Saracen Historie. 8

drawing to it by any goodwyl in himselfe leuied an army, in which he also had retayned the Arabian Scenites, with whom some say that Mahomet was, and that in a battell wherein Cosdroes side was discomfited, he was soze wounded by a common Souldier named Turcus. And when Heraclius had many times ioynd battell with Cosdroes, and in diuers confictes put him to the soyle, at length he so much crushed his power y he was glad to fly beyonde the riuer Tigranes, where he proclaimed his yonger sonne called Medarces, Successour and heyer apparaunt to his Crowne, dishereteng and not regardinge his elder sonne Sirochis, a younge Gentleman of great hope and towardnesse. Whose heart not patiently bzyng this contumelious and unnaturall dealing, secretly conspyred with Heraclius, to betray both his Father and his Brother Medarces, (whom his father had so unkindly preferred before him) with al their riches and princely furniture. And promised further, to dis campe and remove out of all the Romane Provinces such Garrisons as his Father had placed there, conditionallye that hee might enioye the Kingdome of Persia, and a firme peace infrigible to be kept betwene both Empires. In this poynte, Heraclius beyng a Christian Prince was no more ashamed to deliuer the Kingdome of Persia to a wicked and rank rebellious person, Trayfor to his owne Father, and Brother (being now throughtly weakened with the losses of so many unluckye battailes, and now most certainly in his owne handes, specially the King himselfe trusting to his leggs and fleeing, if he could haue vsed his good fortune & victozy when it was offered vnto him) and to buy a dishonorable cowardly peace, by consenting to such a wicked deede: then y wicked Barbarian & disloyal yonker was, by such vndue & detestable meanes to pul y Kingdome frō the to himselfe. Such desire of principallitie reigned in y one, & so great loue of slothful idleness in the other.

C ij.

Cosdroes

The first Booke

Horrible
and unnatu-
rable mur-
der.

Cosdroes therfore and Medarses with their wiues being apprehended and brought backe from whence they were fledde, were cast into prison, and within a while after, by the commandement of Syrochis, both put to death. In whom appeared a cruell example of Fortunes variable-
nesse. A goodly president and warning for Princes, to marke and consider upon, in nominating their Successors, that they at no hand reiectinge the stout and valyaunt, elect and chose tender weaklynges and effeminate Perycokes. For nothing so soone moueth a noble and firc heart to furious impatience and indignation, as (beyng stout and couragious) to be reiected and not accompted of, among his owne friends. All things in Persia by means of this League appeased and set in order, and Syria and Ierusalem with the other Prouinces restozed to the Roman Empire, Mahomet accompanied with a pompous traine, met with Heraclius in his returne whomwarde from these warres, and of hym desired some Countrey for hym, and his Souldiers to inhabite in, which sute and request at the Emperours hands he obtayned. Not long after, it happened that when the Souldiours were payde their wages, the Arabians repyned, and founde themselves agraued, that they were defrauded and cut thozte of their due stipende and ordinarie allowance. Whiche comming to the eares of the chiefe Paymaster, he moze rashly and arrogantly, then wisely and consideratly answered, that there was skantlie innough to pay the Roman and Greeke souldiours, much lesse for such a rascal company of Dogs as they were. Which words with-
in a while after, were almost the subuersion and ruine of all Chyristndome, insomuch that euen tyll this day they beare a grudge of reuengment for this iniurie in their mindes against vs. Such a heape of mischieues many times both the ouerthwartinge wilfulnesse of one rashe person breed, speciallie when stout and warlyke fellows
thynke

First cause
of grudge
betweene the
Chyistians
and Saracens

Of the Saracen Historie. 9

thynk themselves apparantly iniuried. For the Arabians swelling with anger, and incensed with fell disdaine for this reprochfull and open contumelye, departed into Syria, and toygned themselves to Machomettes traine and faction. Wherat Mahomet glad to see his polwer thus increased, went the fourth time against Mecca, determining with might and maine to besiege it. The Magistrats of Mecca perceined well enough his purpose and what he pretended, wherfore with greater preparation and stronger polwer then before, y whole body almost of the Citie bent themselves to repulse his inuasion. Betwene whome there was at the riuer of Bredine a sore and terrible conflict, wherein Mahomet got the victory, and due of the nobyltie and chief Citizens of Mecca (beside a very great number of the Communalty) thre hundred persons: in somuch that at this battell the whole nobylltie of Mecca were in maner all slayne. And so Mahomet like a triumphant Conquerour entred, and toke possession of the faire Citie of Mecca, fortesifying the same with a garrison of his owne appoyntment, & after, departing with his army thence, he layd seige to Hunaimum, and wanne it, deuindinge the spoyle thereof (which was very great) among his Souldiers. After that, he besieged Tarsus, which Citie after he had all in vaine battred the space of a whole month, he raysed his seige, and returned into the maigne Countrey of Arabia and toke firste Itraripe otherwise called Ictripe, and after that Medina a Part towne well peopled with wealthy Iewes. And grauntynge the spoyle thereof to his Souldiours, he ransacked and made hauocke of the towne: but as for all the Iewes which partly in y citie and partly in other places of Arabi (because they being skilfull in y diuine law greatly withstood his attempts & proceedings) he hated deadly, & in the ende in .xi. battalles them vtterlye vanquished, and destroyed. Whence retourninge to Itraripe, he appointed

Mahomet
beginneth
to ruffe.

© iij.

Azeib

The first Booke

Azeib his Lieutenant of Mecca, who entred into the Citie with a great route of Arabians or Saracens. For Mecca then was and yet is, as well because of an opinion of great ancientie (for it is thought to be builded by Ismael or else by Abraham himselfe) as also for, the bignesse of the Citie and reioyce of people most noble and famous. When againe within the same yere, discharging the said Azeib of his office, he appointed Moad the Sonne of Gadel Lieutenant of the same Citie in his roume: with this commaundement, that after Mahomet his death he should defend and maintayne his lawe, and diligently looke that the same should of the people be reverently obserued, and so in the meane season to minister iudgement and execution of his lawes to the Mecchyans. All things in this sort being set in good frame and order, he removed to Tam-bicum, and there buylded a Temple, which is to be seene at this day. Whence he sent an armye under the conduct of Zaid and Malid two of his chiefe Captaines agaynst Alozaid the Sonne of Almataliph, King of Aliendel, whom by force of armes they overcame, and made tributarie. And thus all Arabia being brought in subjection, he commaunded Eubocar with parte of his Hoste to go to Mecca (he himselfe lying still at Icaripe) and charged him that he should leaue neuer a mothers Sonne alive in it, nor suffer any forrayner to enter saving only such as willingly would obey his Lawe and beleue his doctrine. For his meaning and entent was, (as afterwarde he brought it to passe) that Mecca should be the Metropolitane Citie of his religio and Empire. And thus within a short space, Mecca was replenished wyth none but Mahometanes. And not onely Mecca but all Arabia besides (as they are people by nature lyght of beleefe and newfangled) embraced his pestilent errors. And from that tyme, all they which yelved themselves to that Secte, were called by the name of Saracens, both because that error sprang up and

Of the Saracen Historie. 10

and was first begonne by the Saracens, and also for that, Mahomet perswaded them that all the promyses, in the Scriptures promysed to the Seede of Abraham, belonged & appertayned to them. Being puffed up with arrogance by reason of thys good successe in hys affayres, he sent Ambassadors to Kinges and Princes nere adioyning, aduysing them to embrace his Religion, and vnto them addressed hys letters, sealed wyth a Signet of Syluer, wherein were engrauen these wordes: Mahomet the messenger of God: namely to the Emperour of Constantinople, to the King of Persia, the King of Egypte and to other Princes. Afterwarde he created foure Tribunes or chiefe Capitaynes in warres commonly called Admyralls, whiche had euerie one vnder them many Peticapitaines and Centurions: and these foure he woulde commonly vse to call the sharpe Swordes of God, and them he commaunded to goe into the foure partes of the worlde, euerie one by him selfe a seuerall waye, and to kyll all suche as repugned hys Lawe. There names were, Ebubezer, Omar, Ozmen and Ali the Sonne of his vncle Salurelib, vnto whom he also toynd in mariage Fatema, hys daughter in Lawe by hys first wife.

Of these foure, Ebubezer, called of some Vbequar and of some other Buback or Eubocar, father in Lawe to Mahomet, tooke hys voyage to Palestina, and there layde Siege to a certayne towne called Muchea, the Capitayne whereof was one Theodorus Begarius who had the rule of the towne in the behalfe and name of Caesar. Who gathering together his power, sobainly set vpon the Saracens with such valiant courage and force, that many of them being slayne, the residue like fall fellows ranne away. At which time, the thirde Ibes of Sparch, Mahomet dyed, in the yere of our saluation. 637.

When

The first Booke

When he had reigned tenne yeres, in the house of Asma his wife, in the Citie Medina, and in the very same bedde wherein he was wont to sleepe and take his rest. His bodie without any princely furniture or ceremonial solemnitie, was shined and lapped in a white Sheet three tymes double, and so being chested in an yron coffin, was after a homely sort buried: where afterwarde his kinsfolkes and Allies edified a sumptuous and magnificall Temple of brycke worke, and arched the same wyth a vault so pargetted with Lodesstones (whose nature is to draw yron into it) that the yron Coffyn wherein Mahomet his body was inclosed, was drawn by, even unto the toppe of the Church and there hangeth. For which cause that place is yet with great deuotion and Pilgrimage worshipped of all the East. They say that while he was banished his Countrey, going once on Pilgrimage into Mauritania Tingitana; he crossed the Seas ouer into Spaine. But when he vnderstode that Bishop Isidore laide waite to haue caught him; he immediatly shifted thence and conueyed himselfe away. Upon his death bed, he appointed Ali his sonne in lawe to be his Successour and the Caliph (that is to saye the chiefe Prelate) of his Secte and unto him together with his daughter, he committed the whole charge of his body. But Eubocar his father in lawe stopped them a tyme, in that matter, alledging that for as much as Mahomet deceased in his house, and by his only meanes had stepped by to such credite, welth, estimation and government, as being bolstered, maintained and preferred by his countenance and friendship, none other by godd reason was fitter to succede then he that had bene his chief supporter. Against whom Ali burst not once open his mouth to reply; because Eubocar himselfe was a man of great power and also his kinsmen Omar and Ozmen toke part with him, whiche were men valiaunt and factions, whose wordes would be heard and

Of the Saracen Historie. 11

and whose commandements befoze his, would be obeyed. Who forasmuch as by good right they iudged the kingdome to appertayne vnto them, being Coadiutours to Mahomet in the exployte of all his affaires, had lesse haue Eubocar succede, beinge olde & their nere kinsman then Ali being young and in his lusty yeres, who might perchance raigne so long, that no hope euer to enioy the kingdome by the order and course of nature shoulde be left to them, and also for that he was nothinge of kin vnto any of them. Wherefoze Eubocar was made high Bishoppe of Mahomet his Sect: who immediatly after his creation, departinge out of his owne Territories with a great Army, discomfited the Roman Garrisons, and retourning into Arabie with victoꝛye, dyed, not without some suspicion of payson, when he had reigned not full ye three yeres, and without any princely funeralles buried nere to Mahomet. After him succeeded Homar, who (as we befoze shewed) was his kinsman. Hesubdued Bosra the chief citie of all Arabie with many mo, and conquered all the countrey as farre as Gabata. At which successe of the Saracens, the Emperour Heraclius greatly stomping sent his Brother Theodorus with a great army against them. Who encountering in a bloody battell with Homar, was overcome and fled to Emessa. Heraclius hearing tidings of this heauy chaunce, furnished out Baanes with a greater power against them, who incamped himself nere Emessa. Where the Saracens settinge vpon hym with great force and violence, were by hym banquished, insomuch that they were fayne to trudge into the borders of Damasco, and lodging their campe by the banke side of the riuer Bardanes made such outrageous roades and incursions into the Countrey adioynynge, that no man was hable to repress their furie nor withstand their invasion. Wherefoze Heraclius mistrustinge any good successe in the pursute of further warres, and hauninge great

The first Booke

great diffidence in his owne power, fearynge also his owne lyfe and safetie if he should any longer stay within that Province and Countrey (for hee was at that time in Hierusalem, out of which, since the League and composition made with Persia hee had not departed) tooke alwaye with hym all the precious Jewelles and sumptuous Ornamentes of the Temple of Hierusalem, least the barbarous Enemies should despoyle them, and retourned agayne to Constantinople.

The next yere, the Saracenes layde siege to the Citie Damasco, wherewith Baanes (who defended the Citie with the sayd Emperours Garrisons) being greatly moved, desired Theodorus Sacellarius (Lieutenaunt for the Emperours Maiestie in Assyria) to come to ayde and assist hym. Which hee making hast to doe, was by the way surprized by the Saracenes and discomfited.

The Souldiers vnder Baanes, not willing to serue vnder a Capitayne of small credit and countenance, but rather desirous to haue a Governour of most high power and authoritie, saluted hym their Emperour. But they which came with Sacellarius and escaped the handes of the Saracenes in their laste bickeringe, willinge to keepe their true allegiaunce to Heraclius, departed thence, and would not in any wyse consent to the depriuation and deposing of their lawfull Prince and Emperour. The number of Baanes his Souldiours was 4000. And Sacellarius had almoste as many.

The Saracenes hauing intelligence of this variance and division among the Romane Souldiers, discomfited from the place where they were lodged, and set vpon them. The bickering was soze on both sides for a while, but (the Wind blowyng ful in the faces of the Roman Host which in that drye and sandy Countrey raysed by the dust) they neither could see their Enemies, nor shantly

fetch

Of the Saracen Historie. 12

fetch their breath. Which opportunitye the Saracenes not neglectinge, but takeyng the same to their most advantage and commoditie, put the Emperials to flight, in which chace, they slayinge through thicke and thinne by dangerous wayes and deepe places did almost all perishe and were drowned in the River Euphrate.

Which luckie victorie passed by the haughty mindes of the proude Saracenes that they aduanced theyr Armye agaynst Damasco, and wyninge that Citie, subdued and brought al Phoenicia vnder their subiection. Then they made preparation to goe into Egypte, whiche hearynge the Romanes, who were Lordes and possessours of that Province, appoynted Cyrus Wylshoppe of Alexandria to be Chieftayne: who sending a solemne Ambassade to the Saracenes for peace, obtained it vpon condition that he should pay vnto them yearly a Tribute of 200000. Crownes. And so for the space of thre yeres they were quiet and receiued no kind of molestation at their handes.

But the Emperour Heraclius vnderstandyng this geare and thinkyng this composition greatly founded to his dishonour, sent for Cyrus home agayne to Constantinople, and in his steede made Emanuel an Armenian, ruler ouer EGYPT, who statlye and playnely denyed the payment of anye money, before by Cyrus promysed to the Saracenes.

Wherefore in great displeasure they inuaded Egypt with a buyge power, and Emanuel with a small compaignie for his sauetie wente to Alexandria. But Heraclius to late now, and to hye coste beyng taught, that promyse and faith oughte to be kepte and perfourmed euen to the Enemies, when hee well sawe that hee had not strength ynough, to match in battayle agaynst such mighty foes, sent Cyrus agayne to the

¶ If

Saracenes,

Damasco
wonne by
Saracenes

The first Booke

common supplications should be made during the whole moneth of September, and after the same ended, the whole volume of Mahomet hys lawe should be openly redde to the people.

He was tall of stature, broune coloured, balde headed, thinne bearded and the same somewhat enclining to whiteness, and was burged nere to Mahomet. But befoze he dyed, feeling himselfe so foze wounded that he despaired of reconerie, he appoynted for his Successour Ozmen: who also had been a great furtherer and fauourer to Mahomet in all matters, and had twyse bene his Sonne in Lawe. For he maryed his two daughters, which both deceased wythout chyldzen, in the life time of Mahomet, which dignitie he chiefly attained thzough giftes and byerie. For receyuing at the handes of Homars Treasurer all hys money and goodes, he frankely distributed bothe it and all that he himselfe had lefte vnto him by his Parentes among his Souldiours.

Ozmen therefore beyng inuessed the thyzde Bishop after Mahomet, sente the next yere following a burge armye vnder the conducte of Hucba into Affrica, agaynst the Lozde Gregorie, chiefe and supreme gouernour of all that Province. He beyng overcome in battayle, and Carthage also subuerted, he vnyted all that Province to hys other Saracenicall Dominions. But fearyng to be surprized and taken nappynge wyth some todayne Alarum out of Europa, if they shoulde lye long in Carthage, they dislodged thence and remoued to Tunice, a Citie standing within the Baye of Golet, and there rounking themselves for a season, greatly enlarged the same.

But afterwarde receyuing a commaundement from Ozmen that they shoulde not dwell in any Port towne or other places vppon the Sea Coast, (because he had taken suche agrément and order wyth the Emperour, they

Of the Saracen Historie. 14

they departed sixe and thirtie myles from the Sea and aboute a hundredeth from Tunice where they buyloed themselves a Citie called Cairoan.

After this, in the thirde yere of thys mans raygne, Muauias (who as was shewed befoze was Lieutenant of Egypte) wyth a Banie of a thousande and seauen hundredeth (or as some saye) wyth seauen hundredeth Shippes onely, arryued in Cypres, and takinge by force the noble Citie Constantia, spoyled the whole Islande. But beyng certefged that Carcozir one of the Emperour Constans hys Capitaynes, was commynge agaynst hym with a greates fleet, for feare of further harme, he departed thence and planted hys Siege befoze another Citie in the same Islande named Aradum, where he nothyng preuayled. Sodaynge therefore hys purpose to quayle, he bzoughte backe hys Hoaste to Winter in Damasco.

In the meane whyle Ozmen caused the odde papers and Schedules of Mahomet (befoze by Homars procurement collected together) to be bzought into a better order and to be deuised into Chapters, makinge of them a Booke whiche is called the Alcorane, wherin all the opinions and Institutions of Mahomettes Sect are contained and at large specified.

The next Spring after, Muauias with a greater Banie then befoze, arryued in Cypres, and assauleth the Citie of Aradum, which at length after many battyes he wanne: and permitting the Inhabitantes to go whither they woulde wythout hurte or bodely harme, he rased the Citie to the grounde and layde all the Islande waste and left it dispeopled. At the same tyme also, an other army of Saracens vnder the conducte of Busurre, inuaded Ilauria and spoyled the whole Countrey wyth fyre and swoorde, and returned home from thence with five thousand Prisoners.

After

The first Booke

A valiant
enterprise.

After these so many overthrowes and miserable discom-
fitures receaued, Constance Cæsar desired a truce for .ij.
yeres of Muauias: which beinge not obtayned, while
Muauias prepared a great floure at Tripolis a Citie of
Syria, to inuade the Provinces and Territories belong-
ing to the Romane Empire, his purpose by the worthy-
nesse and valiant demeanure of two Brothers was for
a litle while frustrate. Who breaking open the prisons,
wherein a great number of Chyistians were, set them al
at libertie: insonmuch that they suddenly geuing an onset
on the Saracens, killed a maruelous number of them, and
putting the rest to flight, with victoie ran to their ships,
and takeing so many of them as woulde serue to trans-
port them, they set the rest on fire, and came saue into
Thracia.

A lamenta-
ble slaugh-
ter.

But Muauias nothing dismayed with this mischance
and overthrow, prepared a greater navy, and furnished
the same with all habilimentes and Munitions ne-
cessarye, with whom he landed at Phœnice a Porten of
Lycia, where Constance with his floure laye: and ge-
uing the charge vpon him, made such a slaughter of the
Romanes, that the Sea was red with the blood of them
that were slayne. Constance disguising himselfe in the
habite and apparrell of a poore man, fled in a small ship
with a fewe others in his company to Constantinople:
Which victoie set Muauias in such a hoggh and conceipt,
that he thought nothing inuincible, or able to withstande
hym. Where vpon he toke Rhodes, and pulled downe
the huge Image of the Sun called Colossus Solis, which
Chares was in making (as Plinie sayth) .xij. yeres, and
the charges thereof owelue to thre hundred Talentes.
The base of this Image being bought by a certen Jew
of Emessa, was so much as nine hundred Camels coulde
carie

Of our en-
gith money
that Sum
a mounteth
to .40000 li.

The Saracens caried away thence not onely this Im-
mage

Of the Saracen Historie. 15

mage which was in height .70. Cubites: but innumera-
ble others. For Plinie writeth that in that Ile there
were beside this Colosse of the Sunne. 73 thousand Sta-
tues or Images, and a hundred lesse Colosses. Hauinge
spoiled Rhodes, they cut their course alonge by the Sea
Agæum, and plagued the Cyclades with lyke calamitie.
At this time also laid Generall of an other army of Sa-
racenes, entred into the borders of Armenia, and wasted
al, farre and nere tyll he came to Mount Caucasus.
And Muauias retournning from Rhodes, furnished a fl-
oure with all thinges necessarye to inuade Sicile, which
wasted and ruyinated the Countre with sword and fire
without mercy, tyll Olimpius the Emperour of Italy (for so
was he that had the gouernance ouer Italy at y time for
the Emperour of Constantinople called) encounteringe
with them in a bloudye Conflite, with much effusion of
Chyistian blood discomfited and expelled them. In
which battell he so eagrelly fought, & was so soze wearied
that he fell sicke and shortly after dyed.

Muauias himselfe leuying an Armye by land, conduc-
ted them into Cappadocia to bessege Cæsarea the head
Citie of that Province. But before he could atchieue a-
ny notable exploit worthy to be remembred, bearinge
that Ozmen the Caliph was dead, in hope to be his suc-
cessour, retwyered with his Host back agayne. This Oz-
mene in y twelfth yere of his Pontificall dignitie being
in his owne house beset and besieged with a company of
Saracenes which woulde haue had Ali to be Caliph, slue
hymselfe, because he woulde not fall into their handes. He
by chaunce lost the King of Mahomet, which all the Ca-
liphes before hym wore: and caused an other to be made
of silver, wherein by his commaundement were ingra-
uen these wordes: O PERTINACES, O POENI-
TENTES. He was white of colour, graue and curte-
ous of visage, a long Beard and of a meane stature high-
lye

The first Booke

eye and dearelye beloued was he of the common people, both before and after he embraced this Secte, and gotte very great wealth by Sparchaundize.

Notwithstanding he was alwayes verie lyberall, yea rather magnificent and honourable, and (as we haue shewed) disbursed and gaue byzibes largelye to the Souldiours that hee might obtayne the Pontificate. He lyued .lxxxvij. yeres and was buryed in the night without any Funerall pompe because he due himselfe.

Therefore after his death there arose great contention amonge the Saracenes, aboute the election of a newe Bysshoppe. Some woulde haue Ali to succede hym, some Muamad sonne to Ozmen, and some Muauias. But Ali raysed warres againste Muamad, and preuayled agaynst hym, so that he was installed and made Bysshoppe by all mens consent: sauyng onelye Muauias. Who reposinge greate truste and confidence in the Egyptian and Assyrian Souldiours, (whose prowesse and magnanymytie he had sufficientlye tryed aforesyde in so manye Battayles) made sharpe warres agaynst hym, colourablye pretendinge that hee toke the same in hande onely to reuenge the death of Ozmen.

When both the Armies were come to the Riuer Euphrates, Muauias hauyng moze skyll in warlyke pollices, and also hauinge olde beaten Souldiours vnder hym, so fortifyed and entrenched his Campe nere to the Riuer side, and the Citie Babylon, that neyther coulde he be inforced by his aduersarye to fight vnlesse he would hymselfe, and also his Armye shoulde not be destitute of water, (whereof in that Region there is great scarcetye) nor yet be vnprouided of victayles, and mozeouer needed not to feare anye Alarmes behynde at their backes. Whereas in the meane whyle Ali

his

Of the Saracen Historie. 16

his Armye, was extremelye pinched for lacke of water. And so for the space of eleuen Monethes keeping his Souldiours within the Trenches of his Campe, he werged his Enemye and lyngered the tyme onely noly and then with skirmishes, tyll at length by the intercession of certayne Wyse men and others skilfull in the Lawe of Mahomet, order was taken betwene them, that the whole cause shoulde be decided by the iudgement and auarde of two olde men.

On Ali his side was chosen Alascates, and for Muauias parte Alascius. These two comminge to a Towne called Algendel, to sit vpon this waightie matter of both their tytles, the one thought it necessarye that Ali shoulde be disgraced and deposed from his pontificall dignitie, and the other sturde helde opinion that he was a man mooste worthy for the office. Thus pleading to and froe, neyther absolutely determininge nor fully concludinge any attouement, Ali and Muauias retourned agayne either of them to his owne Campe. And neuer ceased with often skirmishing to molest and kill one another, spoyleyng and wasteyng one anothers Countreies till at length Ali in a certayne Temple nere Cufa a Citie of Arabia was by the insidious wyftes and Ambushes of Muauias slayne, and in the same buried, for which cause the place at this daye is called Massadale which is as much to saye, as the house of Ali. In his Kinge bee had this inscription: Corde sincero Deum Dominum veneror. Hee was hight and lowe of stature, his Beard was thicke and longe, his Armes and Legges full of haire, and in his gorge neuer lyfted vp his Eyes.

After Ali was dead, the Citizens of Cufa and Aracha created Alhacem (his eldest Sonne by his wyfe Fatema, the Daughter of Mahomet) Bysshoppe: a man in all poyntes of bodelye feature and comelye

Gij

shape,

The first Booke

shape, resembling his Graundfather Mahomet. He with an armie, marched against Muauias, but when both the Hostes were ordered in battaile araiie readie to geue the onfet, and the boward of the one standing full against the fronte of the other, whether it were because he feared the doubtfull hazard of battaile or else (as some do write) that he was overcome with the goodnes and integritie of nature, unwilling that so great effusion of bloud and destruction of men should be made for his sake, he voluntarilie went and submitted himselfe to Muauias, acknowledging him to be his Superiour. Being thus reconciled one to the other, they went both together to Cusa, and there finding great store of money and treasure, they departed thence to Ictrib, where Muauias with his owne handes crowned Alhacem with the royall Diademe and called him King, because he well knew that he should not liue long. For within five monethes after his Coronation he dyed being poisoned by the same Muauias. His Poetrie engrauen in his Signet was: Solus Deus potens est. Thus Muauias hauing now dispatched and ridde out of the way all his aduersaries, reigned alone. Hauing thus set his affaires in order, he invaded the frontiers of the Romane Empire. But Constantius sending vnto him for peace, had the same graunted, conditionally that Constantius should pay vnto him euerie day ten poundes of gold, and a Slaue with a Horse. At this time Damascus was the chiefe Seate and Metropolitane Citie of the Saracenicall Empire. But in this their so great successe and felicitie, there arose dissensions among themselves for they religion, by reason of the varietie and repugnance of Mahomettes scrables and schedules. The Persians, being (as we haue shewed) now made Saracens, helde opinions muche differing from them that folowed Homars Alcorane in Syria. Wherefore Muauias with his power sending him into Persia, suppressed that Sect and established

Peace dearly bought.

Of the Saracen Historie. 17

his owne faction, which bore al the swaie in Syria, and appointed an order, that the Souldiours of his Secte should haue allowance of two hundred pence by the day, whereas the Persians had but only thirtie. When invading Cilicia, he spoiled all the Countrey with sword and fire.

And when he was returned to Damascus, Sapor King for of all suche places in Persia as yet acknowledged the Romane Empire, now traitterously revolting from the Emperour, sent vnto Muauias, one Sergius master of the horsemen, with request, that he would ayde him to the Emperour of Constantinople. Who being nowe come to Muauias his presence and shewing the effect of his Commission for which he was sent, beholde, there came also an Ambassadour from the Emperour to Muauias, whose name was Andrew, promising vnto him in Caesars behalfe large and ample rewardes, so that he would not aide nor further the proceedings of Sapor. Muauias hearing both their errandes and their offers, answered: that for as much as he accompted both of them for no better then his enemies, he would ayde and take part with him that would geue most. And so Sergius geuing more then Andrew would, Muauias entered into a league with him. Andrew taking hys leaue, in hys waye homeward intercepted Sergius as he was returning into Persia and hanged him on a gibbet: hoping and persuading himselfe, that now the partie to whō the promise was made being ridde out of the way, Muauias with a safe conscience (retaining & keeping still the rewardes already to him giuen) might and would dodge & finde cauillations with Sapor & he was discharged of his promise. But there was more constancie & faithfulness in the barbarous Infidel, then the Greekes wit could conceiue or foresee. For Muauias, meaning to keepe touch and promise inuolubly, sent a bande of Arabians to ayde hym vnder the conduct of Fadala, who being kylled by a fall from his horse, he appointed

Lustie at lowce, only to allure men to his Sect. Ambitious Tragetor.

He hath most money shall haue most friends. Gippe.

G. iij.

at

The first Booke

in his skée his Sonne Iazid Capitaine for that expedition: by which power and armie, Chalcedonia was miserably afflicted and Armaria a Citie of Phrygia taken: and leauyn in it a garrison of fyue thousand Saracens (because Winter approached) they returned with their Holke into Syria.

Rome spoiled.

Emperour murdered.

In this meane season the Emperour although Winter were now at hand and all places covered with snow sent Andrew with a small crew of Souldiours to expulse the garrisons of the Saracens and to recouer Armaria. The Grecques therfore sodainely scaled the walles and brake into the Citie without any resistance, and to reuenge their many ouerthrowes and discomforts before time receyued slew all the Saracens within, who suspecting no suche thing, kepte within their houses, colozing ouer the fire in that extreme colde weather. After this victorie gotten by the Imperialles, Constantius beeyng now come into Italic, out of Grecia, toke his progresse straight toward Rome, where he taking a diligent view of all thinges, fell to the spoyle, and carped away with him all such auncient monumentes and woorkes as were of Marble or brasse, and generally whatsoeuer myght delight and content the eye, and lading his shippes therewith, sent it firste vnto Naples and from thence to the Citie Syracuse in Sicilie: so that he tooke awaye from the Citie moze ornaments in seven dayes space, then so many barbarous spations had done in. C. lviij. yeres before, for there were so many since the first inclinatio of the Romane Emperre. During his abode there, leauyn his life excessively & libidinously and loking to recouer the subbie and tribute that he had with much rigour and crueltie exacted and assailed the Cities and Islandes of Italic to pay in so much that many were spoiled not only of their goods but also of their wiues and chyldren, he was by his owne people slaine and murdered. After who succeeded

Of the Saracen Historie. 18

ceeded in the Emperre his Sonne Constantine, whom the Saracens perceiuing to be a Colward and vnwarlike person, priuily made preparation for a nauie to invade Thracia and Greece, if any tumult or seditious bypore should fortune to kinde in Constantinople. But because all thinges were there quiet, they sayled into Sicilie, wherein the late spoiles of Rome and of all Italy were layd up: and with sodaine force toke the citie Syracuse which was not defended nor kept with any garrison. And when they could not rouse there in safetie by reason of the nearnes of Italic, they shipped all the ornaments and treasure that was in Syracuse, and with incredible riches returned into Egypt. Albeit there be some which write that Constantine hearing of the deathe and murder of his father Constantius, sayled into Syccile and rayed the Spoyles from thence with him to Constantinople.

After this, an other populous armie of Saracens entering into Affrica, had such successe that they destroyed and wasted all the Countrey nere the Sea coastes (for a great part of the maine land and middle soyle was already in their subiection) and harped away with them into slaerie and thralldome. 800000. Prisoners. And on another side Muamias furnished out a huge Host under the conduct of Muamades and Caisses, which subdued Lydia and Cilicia two other of the Romane possessions. And within a while after, to thintent he might conquere & subdue Constantinople, he sent another armie after the other, wherof Sarus was General, which being iorned to other, marched both directly toward the Citie Constantinople & girded it about with a terrible siege. And for there moze strength, he appointed a nauie to help the, which stoped all the passages and places frō the West promontorie of Hebdomum to Cyglobium. With all this force they oftentimes gaue terrible assaults to the citie, but their attempts were all in vaine. This siege lasted from the month of Apriill till September.

Constantinople besieged seven yeres.

Then

The first Booke

state left, which then bered Crete, under the guydaunce and conduct of Fadall and Cadall. Whrough these good fortunes and prosperous successes, the State of the Roman Empire seemed strong to flourish, and somewhat to revive and recover his pristine glory. But Muauias havyng thus concluded a peace and league, which to the Christians was most pernicious (because the Saracens beinge nowe weak and without force mighte have bene utterly oppressed and easily vanquished if Caesar had not moze delighted in present Idleness and quiet rest then studying for the long tranquillitie of his Common wealth, which by no meanes is made moze longer of continuance and safer with barbarous nations then by perfect victory) turned his power & made his quarell against the Mardaites, and dispossessing them from their high deserting places in y^e Mountaines which before they enjoyed, he studied and bent his mind to appease certayne controuersies and Sectes newly sprung up about his religion. Therfore he called a generall Counsell or Synode of his sect, unto whom by publique proclamation he commaunded all the learned men of his Empire, and such as had any writing or Schedule either of Mahomet or of any his predecessours, Bishoppes before hym, to come and bring the same writings with them. This Tartarical Synode was holden and celebrated at Damasco, where (when as nothinge coulde be determined by reason of the contrarietie of repugnant sentences) hee commaunded sixe of the wisest in y^e company by the common consent of them all to be picked out, & so there were chosen Mulcine, Boari, Buor, Anocci, Acermine & David. These six beinge shut up together into one house, wth all such writings as were thither brought, hee gaue straight charge that they should lay their heades together & out of these writings gather into one volume such actes & sayings of Mahomet as shuld seme to haue any likelihod of truth. And whē they had

Of the Saracen Historie. 20

had made sixe volumes, y^e residue of the writings he caused to be throwne into a riuer, which were so many that 200. Camels were laden with the cariage of them away. When he appointed by a law a greuous paine & punishment to as many as in thought, word or dede belaued otherwise then in those sixe Alcoranes was prescribed. Of the which six volumes, afterward proceeded and sprong by foure Sectes of Saracens: which are called Melicians; Afasians, Alambelians & Buanifians. The Aphrycans were Melicians: the Arabians and Damascenes; Afasians: the Armenians and Persians, Alambelians: the Alexandrians & Assyrians were Buanifians. In Cayre the greatest Citie of Egypt, all these Sectes (no man agayn saying) are vsed and embraced. When Muauias had finished & taken this order in his matters at Damasco which was y^e head seat of his Empire, he died and was there buried. He was the first of the Saracen Capitaines y^e with Ozmen (during Homars raigne) entred into the Roman prouinces wth an host, and was the first y^e enlarged & amplified the limites of the Saracenicall Empire: as far as Egypt and Aphrica westward, into Mesopotamia Eastward, and into Asia northward, and was the first y^e constituted a certain seate royall at Damasco: which citie for the fertilitie of the soyle and pleasantnes of the ayre far excelleth any other. He vsed firste of his race, to haue Slaues and Eunuches after a princely state & guise to stand bare headed before hym: for he was a man altogether martial and warlike, and in the atchuiuing of his deuites prudent and wise. His colour was white, his face pleasant and grane, his eyes of diuers colours, his stature meane, his Beard alwayes blacke, for euer as it beganne to ware graye, hee dyed it and conferred it in his former state. He lyued lxxvij. yeares, and raigned twenty and foure. His Signet which he caried about with hym, had in it this Verse engrauen: O Deus ignosce mihi.

By whome Alcoran was clouted together.

The first Booke

Of learning he was altogether ignorant, in so muche that he could not write his owne name: wheras other wise he had by nature a verie profound witte. Wherefore it is reported that Mahomet on a time, making his papers at a banquet in presence of many (as his custome was) said these wordes: God teach Muauias to write & to number, and defend him from all dangers. By which wordes, that craftie Pseudoprophete who knewe the nature of Muauias to be fierce and prompt withall, shewed and signified two things. First, that he, if he had the ayde of any learning, might greatly helpe and furder his Secte. For they which can write, can also reade and thereby become wiser. Then because he saw him to be of suche a fierce courage that he was lyke to aduenture and obiect himself to many perilles and hazardes, he desired of God to teach him the Arte of numbing, whereby he might sharme and obserue due times and tempestiuities, and to haue the skill to take the occasions that shoulde be fittest for the employing of his affayres when they fell: and for the same cause he desired of God to protect & deliuer him from all dangers. But he being a man craftie ynough of himselfe and naturally geuen to policie needed not these helpes.

After that Muauias was dead, immediatly his sonne Iezid was saluted Bishop and King, who atchieued no notable acte in his time worthy of remembrance. For he was a man altogether giuen to sloth, idleness and riot, and moreouer was sickly and of a body nothing lustie: so using that he put many of the nobilitie of Arabie to death. He loued his owne Sister libidinously, and was greatly delighted in learning and Poetrie, and made many verses, a most spightfull contemner of Mahomets Law and euery other Religion. During this mans raigne, Mutar whom he had made President ouer the Province of Persia, perceiuing his wretched sluggishnes and desire of ease openly protested himselfe to be a prophete, & practised ty-

ramie

Of the Saracen Historie. 21

ramie therein: and of the line of this Mutar, the Kinges of Persia which at this day are called Sophi, are descended. Iezid his Poetrie was: DEVS EST MEVS DOMINVS. He raigned thre yeres, and dyed at Arrane, being of the age of forty yeres, when the Citizens of Cufa had called home Hocem the Sonne of Ali, entending to create hym Bishoppe: but Abdalam the Sonne of Iezid in the felbes of Carball nere Cufa, treacherously lying in waite, slue him, and there was he buried. In remembrance of which thing, there was at his graue and Sepulchre afterwarde builded a Citie called Carballa, called so of the name of the field wherin the fact was done. Hocem lefte twelue Sonnes behind him when he dyed, that is to say, Zeinal Abadine, Zeinal Muamedes, Baguer Muamedes, Giafar Cadeneg, Giafar Musa, Cazine Musa, Hali Mucercatus, Alle, Muamedes Taguin, Muamedes Hali-naguin, Alle Haceme Asquerine, Haceme Muamedes Mahadine: which were in diuers places buryed, that is to wit, some nere to their great Graundfathers father Mahomet, some at Bagadat, & some at Herinc: but as for Muamedes Mahadine, the Persians do affirme not to be yet dead, & do hold opinion, that he shall come mounted on horsebacke to declare and shewe the law to all Nations, and shall conuert all people, and that all this shall first begin in the citie of Massadale where his body of his graundfather Ali lyeth buried. And therfore they haue alwayes in that citie a horse ready to receiue him, whom, after the ende of their prayers and orisons, they lead with Torch light to the Church: and vpon one certaine day which is among them kept most festiual and sollemne they bring this horse to the Temple where Ali is buryed with as much pompe as maye bee, beseeching and making petition vnto the same Ali, that he would as speedily as may bee, send vnto them this his Nephew whom they looke for. Vnto the which feast, there is resort of people from di-

v. iij.

uerse

Dotting be-
liefe of Per-
sians.

The first Booke

Marocco
builded.

honour together with the opinion that was conceiued of hym and his Sect, so incensed and swelled his ambitious mind, that he first of all others tooke vpon hym the name of a Miralmumine, which word in the Arabian language signifieth the Prince of all beleuers: which name after wards our Historiographers depzaued & corruptly called Miramuline. He also builded the large and most noble citie of Marocco nere to the foote of Mounte Atlas, and appointed it to be the chiefe Reye and Metropolitane Citie of all his Kingdome: notwithstanding many doe affirme that it was built by Iosippus the Sonne of Telsine, and some say by an other. Against them Abdimelick (partlye for that he sawe him to procure no hurt nor attempt any hinderance to his proceedings) and partlye because he was trapped in heapes of troubles elsewhere and had more yrons in the fire then he coulde wel temper, attempted nothing. For although he had supplanted Dack with all his faction and adherentes and with victorie retourned to Damascus, yet could he not long enjoy that victorie nor bryoke it quietlye, because there began such a plague and pestilentiall mortalitye that had almost quite destroyed all the Saracenicall Nation.

Beside this plague, the people were greatly pinched with famine in all his Countries. And the Mardaies getting agayne the possession of Mount Libanus, enlarged their limites as farre as Hierusalem: and moreover the principalitye of Persia, vsurped by Mutar, much disquieted his troubled minde. Abdimelick weltringe in the surges of this froward Fortune, and feare to bee ouerwhelmed with some greater mischaunce, sent a solemne Ambassade to Iustinian then Emperour, beyng of the age of sixtē yeres, for a confirmation of the peace and League that Muauias strake with Constantine, and farther to request hym that the Mardaies might bee dispossessed and driuen out of Libanus, which thinge if the Empe-

Of the Saracen Historie. 23

rouer would graunt, he promysed that he would euery day geue vnto the Romanes in the name of a Tribute, ten poundes of Golde, a Slaue and a goodly faire Horse. And moreover in consideration of the confirmation of this peace which he so earnestly desired, (to theend that Caesar might the better expulse and rid the Mardaies which nowe were not aboue .xij. thousand in number out of Libanus) he gaue and graunted vnto him the one halfe of his yearly Tributes of Cyprus, Armenia and Iberia. This peace beyng confirmed and he deliuered out of the feare of the Mardaies (a fierce and outrageous people) he sent Ciasa with a great Armye againste Mutar, who vnder the pretext and coloure of Religion practized tyranny and ex- tort regiment in Persia. Which expedition and voyage had very vnluckie end: for Mutar with an host marching to meete him, vanquished him and discomfited al his power, whereby he wanne a greater estimation and credite then euer he had before.

Abdimelick to th'intent he might from a nērer place surueigh and beholde how matters prospered in Persia, goeth into Mesopotamia: where he was againe w many calamities & aduerse bzintes soze crushed. For the Emperour Iustinian (the Slaueys partlye yielding themselves vnto his mercy and partlye fained by bent of Swozd) picking out of the stoutest Gallantes in all that Nation, a crewe of .30000. or there aboute, mustred and toke by Souldiours apace for his warres: and so trustinge to their balaunt seruice, bzake the League lately made: makinge for the colour of his quarel, the money payable for his yearly Tribute had not the Roman stamp, but was of a new Arabian coigne. Sending therfore his Lieutenant Leontius w this new leuied army into Asia, subdued and brought vnder his subiection Iberia, Abania, Hircania and Media, which Regions were vnder the Saracenes Emperre.

Tribute of
Saracenes

3

At

The first Booke

At the same time also one Said reised sedition and rebelled against Abdimelick: against whom Abdimelick spending hymselfe with an Army, so dismayd and terrified hym, that he fel downe on his Marybones and craued for geuennesse. Whom Abdimelick with dissimuling countenance pardoned and seemed to forgeue: but with in a while after he commaunded hym priueltie to be slain. At this same time also there arose an other tyzantie among the Saracenes, named Abdala Zubir, who sent his Brother Musub into Persia against Mutar: and of hym Mutar was both vanquished and slayne: albeit he enioyed not the fruite of his victory long. For Abdimelick withall his power goynge against hym, ouercame and discomfited hym and all his host: and from thence holding on his way into Persia, brought all that Province vnder his subiection. Abdala Zubir discouraged with the good successe of his aduersarie, fled vnto Mecca, after whome, Abdimelick sent Cagian with a great Armye to pursue and take hym, who by force winning the Citie Mecca, slue Zubir, and set the auntientest Idole of that citie with the Temple also on fire.

And thus, Abdimelick hauinge recovered Persia, and dispatched out of the way his aduersaries, and being alone in possession of the Saracenicall Soueraigntie, (after hee had oftentimes in vaine, besought the Romane Emperour that he would not infringe the League betwene them concluded,) at length bent all his power against the Greeques which inferred warre vpon hym against the Lawes both of God and man, and ouer his army he appointed for Generall one Muamates. Who findinge the Greeques at Sebastonople, hanged the Tables of the League vpon a Speare point, and caused the same to bee bozne before him like an Ensigne. And calling vpon God to reuenge the breaking and violatiō therof (which were so solēnelie made and confirmed by taking his holy name

to

Of the Saracen Historie. 24

to witnesse) he in good order of battell gaue the charge vpon them. Albeit first he had corrupted the Sclauoy with money. Of whom asone as the battell was once begun nerehand xx. p. revolted from the Emperour: went to the Saracenes: which thinge so appauled the Greeques, that they were easely ouercome and put to flight, and in the chase were kyled almost euery mothers soune. The Emperour Iustinian (for he was present hymselfe at this conflict) dishonozably and shamfully by flight sauing hymselfe with a few others in his company, asone as he came to Leucas, caused all the remnant of y new band of sclauoyes to be put to death and their dead carkeases to be cast into the Sea. Wherevpon the saracenes after ward, without any damage not only recovered their olde Territories before lost, but also inuaded the residue of the Roman Provinces. Sabacius also a noble Senator, and Brother of Armenia, vnderstanding of the losse and overthrow of the Romans, revolted to the Saracenes and betrayed into their hands the whole countie of Armenia: After which they yet cease to ouerrun the whole East, and to leaue no way the christians into seruitude: for y part also of Persia, which yet acknowledged the Roman Empire was subdued by Cagian, and Muamates, with helpe of those Sclauoyes turning to his side, and entring into the Provinces of Thracia, spoiled it with sword and fire pitifully: the Roman Empire being in the meane season with ciuile discord and intestine hatred so dissenured and torne asunder, that no man durst set in foote to withstande this outrage.

The Lord Leoutius hauing exiled Iustinian into y Ile Cherson, usurped y empire: and straightwaies sent a Lord of his countie named Iohn, with a nauie to inhibit and stop the violent irruption of the Aphricane Saracenes, which not content with the middle lande y was graunted vnto them by league for their habitation, inuaded a fresh the Countie nere about the Sea Coastes.

¶

This

The first Booke

This man vanquishing the Saracenes in battaile, drove them out of the Romane Territories. But for as much as their power and wealth was dreadfull and terrible in Syria and all the East, and newes brought by sundry rumours that there was more ayde coming from Abdimelek, to the ayde of these Saracens in Africa, John thinking his power unable to defend and keepe the possession of y^e province, went to Constantinople to fetch more ayde from Leontius, leaving his host behind him in Africa. But while these things were so toly purueighed and prepared by Leontius, Abdimelek understanding y^e state of his subiectes in Africa, and soze moved with the late losse by them there sustained, furnished out a great shalle to recover the province againe. With wh^o the Romane fleet (thinking themselves not hable to make their part good) departed thence, into Crete. Where y^e Chieftaines and Princes consulting together, thought it much soder to their shame & dishonour to returne home, having thus lost Africa and left the same open to their enemies: and partly moved with displeasure towards the Emperour which did so dreemingly provide for the furniture & supply of warlike affaires, egged the Mariners to revolte, and to selecto Abdimar Emperour, whom they also called Tybarius. He in all hast speeding himself toward Constantinople with an armie, and finding Leontius unprompted, without any day warning the Citie, and taking Leontius, cut of his nose and cast him into prison. The Saracens for this cause enjoyed all Africa, and were out all the Romane garrisons. The most part of them that then inhabited the places of Africa were the Jews, were of the Gothes lyne.

This Tyberius (immediatly after he was enthroned and made Emperour, sent his brother Heraclius with a huge armie into Asia against the Saracenes. Who invading Syria peared into the countrey as farre as Samo-

The Emperour
shamefully
abused by
his owne
subiectes.

Of the Saracen Historie. 25

fata and waiking at the places nere therabout, sue nere hand of them two hundred thousande, and taking there many prisoners and great booties, brought all the Countrey in great feare of him. And at the same time the Princes of Armenia, in a sedition killed all the Saracenes, which were in Armenia: and sending Ambassadors to Abdimar, received the Romanes againe into their province. Muamates netted with these dealinges, with a great power set upon them, brought them againe under the Saracenicall obeyfaunce, and burned the chiefe Princes and leaders of the people alive. When he also invaded Cilicia, spoiling and ruyning it everie where piteously but he escaped not himselfe scotfree. For Heraclius encountering with him, discomfited a great part of his host and toke the rest prisoners, whom he sent bound to Constantinople to the Emperour. At which time Abdimelek dyed, in the xxi. yere of his raigne. The shew before, that one Abedramon (descended of the Mauronion stock) conveyed himselfe into Mauritania in the beginning of Abdimelek his Pontificate, and was there in such estimation among his people and Sectaries, that all the Saracens dwelling in that province reuerenced him as an other Caliph or rather as one greater then a Caliph, but for as much as he entemedled not with any bellicall insurrections and also was farre of, Abdimelek did not persecute him so as he did others. But yet notwithstanding his name was great in Arabia. He dying, left a sonne behind him, named Vlce, who succeeded Abdimelek in the Pontificate, & was called the Muralmumine, in the yere after the incarnatio of Christ. 768. During whose raigne Armenia was once againe brought under the Romane subiectio, and the Saracens there expelled. The Arabians making an irruption into y^e Romane provinces, toke by force y^e citie Mistra with many Castles & fortified townes and with great booties and payes returned home. Then

Daughter
of Saracens.

Ag. ilij.

again

The first Booke

againe vnder the conduct of Abatius they inuaded Galatia and sacked it miserably: and the Emperour Iustinian being againe restozed to the Emprye by Trebellius king of Bulgaria, the Saracens taking occasion by reason of these new tumultes & commotions, issued out of Egypt with a greater preparatiō & powrer thē they did before, and beledd all Lybia to the Ocean Sea. I call it now Lybia, because I haue already shewē y^e Affrica was before by thē take, which is a part of Lybia: to thende you may vnderstand y^e I do not speake of a part only, which was already conquered, but of y^e whole region. For whereas Lybia or y^e whole countrey of Affrica being almost on euery side compassed about with water like an Island, is on y^e South environed with our Sea, on the West and South with the Atlantique Ocean, on y^e East with the East, red & Arabian Sea, and is ioyned to Asia by a little narrow part of dry land lying betwene the uttermost end of the Arabia Gulph & our Sea: yet Egypt (which p^rouince extendeth frō the Cataractes and fludgates of the riuer Nilus to the mouth of the same) together with Aethiopia (which lieth aboue it) of many old wryters, yea of late Authours also, is not reckened into Affrica. And as y^e riuer Nilus parteth the East part of this halfe Ile, that is to wit, Egypt & Aethiopia, where the large & mightie dominions of Presbyter Iohn lye: so y^e riuer Nigir, springing (as many wryte) from the same fountain, and hauing (as the other hath his course from the South into the South) so this frō the East into the West, and falling into the Atlantique Ocean, parteth and separateth the most westlie Kingdomes of the Nigrites from it. So that, the Lybia which we here meane, is contained within the boies of Nilus and Nigir the Atlantique Ocean and our Sea. All which as farre as it stretcheth from the West into the East, the buyge Mount Achlas cutteth and seuereth a sunder: being at this daye diuided into thre partes, Barbaria, Numidia

and

Of the Saracen Historie. 26

and Lybia. Lybia which in the Arabian tongue is called Sarra, that is to say Desert, is bound on the South wyth the kingdomes of the Nigrites, on the South with y^e mount Achlas, on the East to the riuer Nilus & on the West with the Oceā. Numidia called in y^e Arabiā tongue Biledulgerid, (which is to say, a Countrey wherein groweth great store of dates) stretching frō the borders of Egypt to the Oceā, lyeth South frō the mount Achlas. Barbarie from the East to y^e West (contained within y^e same limittes and borders) comprehendeth all y^e which lyeth betwene Achlas and our Sea. And this is also diuided into foure p^rouinces: Mauritania Tingitana, which containeth the Kingdomes of Marrocco & Feze: Caesariensis, wherein is y^e Kingdome of Telenine: & y^e iii. part both in thold time & now is properly called Affrica, wherein in ancient time y^e Carthaginians flourished, containing now at this day y^e Citie Affrica, Tunic and Tripolis. After this foloweth Cirenes, which is comprehended in y^e Kingdome of Bugia. At the first inuasiō and irruptiō made into this p^rouince during the raigne of Ozmen, y^e Saracens swarming out of Egypt wan Cyrenaica & Affrica. But making peace afterward with y^e Emperour, they were commaūded to depart from all the places nere to the Sea coastes, and so they remoued further into the Confines of Numidia and Lybia, and in the raigne of Muauias they againe entring into y^e Territories of y^e Carthaginians, subdued the countrey of Affrica, all about the Sea coastes. And nowe auancing forwarde their Standards they inuaded both y^e Mauritaines, & appointed for y^e limites of their Empire the Oceā & the riuer Nigir.ouer which p^rouince Vicer the chief Bishop of the Mahumetane sect, made Mucas high deputē, & appointed vnto him a strong power. But yet y^e part of Tingitana that lyeth toward the Straides of Marrocke was vnder the rule of Roderike Visigotte king of Spaine. For the Gothes expulling all the Romane garrisons were lordes

of

The first Booke

of the whole countrey of spaine, from 300. yeres almost passed, acknowledging for their King none but this Rodericke : who was not onely King of both the Spaynes, the nêrer and further, but also possessed all that laye toward the strait Sea in Mauritania Tingintana. The Straites in Affrica, hath thre Promontories, making two Bayes or Elbowes into the landwarde : and in Spaine as many Promontories with so many bolomes or Elbowes of the Sea. The famous and noble Cities by the Sea, in Spayne, were Carteia situate by the Promontorie Calpe, which afterwarde was called Tarifa : in Aphrica, Tingis, of whom Mauritania Tingintana hath his name, standing by the Promontorie Abyle : and Cepca, called of Ptolomæus, Eshiliffa.

The Romanes deuided all Spayne into two Provinces, and sent into them two Proconsulles, or Propretors : whereof the one gouerned the nêrer and the other the furder. But these partes were not alwayes of one greatnesse : for when as they had not yet the whole possession of all Spayne, the hyther Spayne was contayned within the riuer Iberus and the Pyrene Mountaynes : and all beyond Iberus was of the further Spayne, which belonged to the Carthaginians. But after that they had diuised out the Punique Garrisons out of euery quarter of the Countraie, and had got the possession of all Spayne, they called that which on the East and south is enuironed almost Islandwise toward Sea, on the West with the Atlantique Ocean, on the North with the Sea Cantabricum and the Pyrene Mountaynes (exceptinge Lusitania and Betica) by the name of the nêrer Spayne : and those partes which be deuided by the riuer Anas and compassed about wth the Ocean as far as to the Asturias, thei called the further Spayne, calling the which marcheth vpon the Straits, Betica, which now contayneth Vandalusia & the Kingdome of Granada, & the which extendeth from the riuer Anas to the riuer

Of the Saracen Historie. 27

riuer Duria they called Lusitania and al the hyther part, Tarraconensis. Which tripartite diuision Geographers in their descriptions haue obserued.ouer these thre Provinces and also ouer the Asturias and Cantabrians which be on this side the Pyrenees, by the North ocean, and also ouer the Province called Narbonensis so farre as the Riuer of Rhone, which was then called Gallia Gotica, this Rodericke Visigot was (as we haue sayd King & gouernour at that time, when the Saracenes extended the limits of their Dominion in Aphrica to the ocean, which was in the yere of our Lord 712.

This Rodericke made Iuliane Carle of Cepta (descended of the blood of Visigottes, a man of great power and wealth in Spayne and chief ruler ouer a certayne Ilande now called Viridis, lying in the narrow Seas, and many other places aswell in Spayne as in Tingintana) his high Deputie and warden in Betica and all other such places as were vnder his rule in Tingintana. Vnto hym hee committed the whole charge, to defend Spayne on that side from the inuasions of the Saracenes, and to kepe the narrow Seas. This Iulian had a Daughter named Calba, a beautifull young Ladye, insomuch that for her partsonage she was no lesse pernicious to Spayne, then faire Helena was to the Troyanes. For Rodericke fallynge in loue with her, whether it were by force or by fraud (for it is reported both waies) made a breach into her virginittie. Which vnprincipally trick she (as sone as she conveniently could) vttered and discovered vnto her Father. Who dissimuling as though he had knowne nothing of this iniurie done to him in his Daughter, and keeping to hymselfe the desire of iust reuenge till a tyme for his purpose conuenient, desired leaue of the Kinge to departe the Court and to go to Cepta, because being there (as he said) he could much better defeat the Saracenes intended enterprises. Which request obtayned, he trusted vpon al his furniture

Beautye of
a Woman.
causeth
much mis-
chief.

The first Booke

nature of household & wth his wife went to Cepta. When he was come thither, sayning an excuse & his wife was soze sicke, he desired & king to geue Cabat his daughter leaue to come home and see her languishing mother, who was neuer like to see her any moze. For Caba with other Princes and Lordes daughters (as the manner was) at that time waited in the Court. Having by this meanes receiued home his Daughter, he went to Mucas who was (as befoze we shewed) the head ruler of all Lybya vnder Vlce, and vnto hym he opened from poynt to poynt the whole cause of his comming away from the Court, and promysing to make hym Lord of all Spayne if he woulde geue the aduenture & take the enterpryse in hand. Mucas shewed the whole matter vnto Vlce, because he durst not deale in such a waightye case, withoute his will and pleasure first knowne. Of whom he receaued this answer, that the matter propounded was of great importance and difficultie, and that it were not best in such a doubtfull matter to geue rather credite to a subtile person, and one altogether estranged from their Religion. Notwithstandinge, to trye the trust and faithfulness of the Carle, he was resolved, that the matter might be best assayed, by deliuering vnto hym a small crewe of Souldiours at the first: and if he sped well and had good successe at the beginning, after ward moze ayde and greater power might be sent. Mucas although he were thoughtlye perswaded by the Carles talke and motion, that althings woulde sozt to good effect, yet durst he not passe nor goe beyond the contents of his Commission, prescribed by Vlce. Wherefoze he deliuered vnto Iulian, one of his Capitaynes named Tarife Auenzarca with a hundred Hozsmen & 400. footmen. Who were all transpozted in foure Ships, into a litle Ile lyinge in that Elbow of Sea that the Promontorie Calpe maketh, which Ile was afterward of this Capitayne Tarife, called Gelriza Tarif.

¶ Vnto

Of the Saracen Historie. 28

¶ Vnto this place Iulian called and by gentle meanes allured all his friendes, and kinsfolkes, recomptinge vnto them from poynt to poynt the commodities and pleasures which by his labour, industrie and perilles the King had receaued, for recompence whereof, he sozgat not to tell them the Kings vngzatitude, and the spightfull dishonour done vnto hys house by the rauishing and despoiling of his Daughter, telling them further, that the King did vniustly vsurp that kingdome, whiche by rightfull succession of inheritance belonged to the Sonnes of Vitiza. For which causes he desired their helpynge handes in this so good and iust quarell to assiste hym, telling them that the next yere he woulde come with a conuenient army to persozme asmuch as he then spake. He so much perswaded them with these and such lyke wordes, that they promysed hym when time shoulde serue their best seruite and furtheraunce: and there vpon retourned home every man to his owne house. Iulian because he woulde make a beginning of his purposed warre, inuaded the Ile Gades lying in the vtter part of the ocean, nere to the narrow sea, whiche Ile was afterwarde named Alzira Dalfrada: which with sword and fire he spoiled, carpyng the inhabitants away with hym prisoners, and after that shewed the lyke curtesie to Lusitania and Berica, and being laden with aboundaunce of spoyles and booties returned into Aphrica.

Mucas seeing this good successe and thinking it a beginninge good ynough, deliuered vnto hym twelue thousande Saracenes beside them befoze, vnder the conducte of the same Tarife. With whome hee arrived at the foote of the Promontorie Calpe, which Mountayne was thereof afterward called Gabel Tarif, which is as much to say as the Mount of Tarif, and now it is called Gibel, and setting his Souldiours on land, toke by force the citie Carceia, which afterwarde euen till our time was called Tarifa.

¶ ij

¶ The

The first Booke

The rumour of this great commotion being spread throughout all Spaine, the kinfolk of Carle Julian gathering together all the power that they were able, and feigning that they went to repulse this Saracenicall inuasio, went straight wayes thither and ioyned themselves with him. And so all their powers being linked in one, they waded and harped al the coast about the Riuer Betis now named Guadalouir, and commonly called Andalusia or of the Vandales, Vandalusia. Roderike in the meane season, with as much speede as he coule, gathered a very great Armie, and appointing his Cousen Germaine Ignicus to be Chieuetaine thereof, sent him against his enemyes. Who making many conflicts and skirmishes with them was at length with all his Armie discomfited and overthrowne. The Saracens hauing made great pillage & desolation in the Countrey, and laden with spoyle of many boties, and carrying a great multitude of Prisoners with them returned into Affrica. At which time, Vlice beyng in Asia, and making preparation to warre with Constantinople, dyed, after whom Zulciminie the Sonne of Abdimelik was made high Bishop, during whose raigne the Saracens the seconde time besieged Constantinople. For immediatly after his creation, he sent Malfana with an armie by lande, and Aumar with an other by Sea against Constantinople, and he himselfe with a great power folowed after. But this his strong and terrible purpose was for a while defeated by Leo the Prætor of Armenia: who they (seeking meanes to entrap and deceiue) were themselves by him entrapped and deceaued: for he stopping the passages & conuenient places through which they must needs goe, hindered their reckening.

Whilist these thinges were in doying, Mucas coming out of Affrica, to congratulate and doe his duetie to Zulciminie the new Bishop, declareth vnto him the state of their affaires in Spaine: whereupon he being merue-

lous

Of the Saracen Historie. 29

lous desirous to enlarge the limites of his Empire, gaue him in commaundement, to send Tarife againe into that Province with a mightier armie then any he had before. Mucas therfore retourning into Affrica, the next yere folowing transfreted with a huge armie into Spayne, keeping with him as a pledge or hostage, Richila Counte of Tingis, and cosen to Julian, whom he halfe mistrusted. Which armie being once landed on the next coast, Roderike speedely gathered the powers of the Provinces nere about. And so with the ayde of the people of Gottalonia (now called Catalonia and in tholde time Lacetania) the inhabitants of Iberia now called Tarracon or Aragon: the Cantabrians beyng at this day in the Kingdome of Nauarre: and the people of Gallia Gottica, wherein are the Cities Tolosa & Nimes vnto the Ryuer Rhone, he so dainly and vnlooked for, encountred with them at the Ryuer Bedalaces whiche of tholde wynters was called Betis, nere to a towne called Xerez. The Saracenes at that tyme had encamped them selues on that side of the Ryuer where Andalusia standeth: and the King wyth his battaile on the other side, wherein the Kingdome of Castile is. For the Ryuer Betis springing out of mount Ortospeda in the borders of Aragon, and runnyng into the Ocean nere to the Streights, diuideth Andalusia and the Kingdome of Granado from Castile: and runneth through the myddle of Betica, which is bounded wyth the ryuer Anas, springing oute of the same Mountaine. Lusitanie lying West from Tarracon, by a straight course reacheth from the mouth or entraunce of Anas forth right to the ryuer Duria: and the ryuer Pisuerra seperateth the Castulonians from the Asturians. In this place, the .iiij. of September being Sunday, in the yere after the incarnation. 714. he aduanced his Standard and committed his fortune god or bad, to the hazard of battail. The fight was most fierce & deadly for the

the .iii.

passage

The first Booke

passage of the Riuer, whilest the one part would needs passe ouer, and the other wold not suffer them. This continued a good while in such equall match, that hard it was to discern to whether partie the victorie would incline: which was much to be merueiled at, considering how soze Spaine had for two yeres last afoze, bene afflicted with dearth of victualles and the Pestilential plague. Whereby the souldiours had not the strength and courage that they had before, and the men, who in a hundredth & fiftie yeres space had not bene trained by in any warres, cockered and effeminated with ease, had lost in a manner all warlike discipline and right vse of handling their weapons, & were moreover, withoute harnesse armour or habilimentes meete for the warres: because Vitiza, Roderike his brother decessour, a most cruell and bloudie Tyrant, had caused all weapons to be taken away from the people and to bee broken. This battaile continued not onely that day, but during all the whole weeke till the Sundate following, there were dayly sharpe and terrible conflictes. And on the eyght daie which was the xi. of September the two Sonnes of King Vitiza hauing the night before indentured and conspired wyth Tarife, (who promysed them their fathers Kingdome,) betwixt bathe and priuely conueighed themselves with their retinue out of the battaile, by meanes whereof Mucas with little ado brought al his armie ouer the Riuer, and then was the Gothes araye quickly broken and they themselves vanquished. Roderike the first day of the battaile, obseruing the aunient guise of his countrey, came into the felde, apparailled in a gowne of beaten Colie, hauing also on his head a Crowne of gold and golden shoes, and all his other appaile set with rich pearles & precious stones, ryding in a horse of Auorie, drawne by two goodly horses. Which order the Gothes used alwayes in battailes for this consideration, & the souldiours well knowing their king could not escape away

This most bloody battaile continuing a whole weeke.

How kings in those daies came into the felde, with what appaile, & for what cause.

Of the Saracen Historie. 30

away by flight from them, should be assured that there was none other way, but either to die together in that place or else to winne the victorie. For it had bene a thing most shamefull and reprochfull to forsake their Prince and appointed Soueraigne. Which custome and maner, many free confederate cities of Italie following, trimmed and adorned for the warres, a certaine Chayre of estate, called Carocio) wherein were set the Penons and Ensignes of all the confederates. This Chayre in battaile was drawne by many Oxen, whereby the whole host was giuen to understand, & they could not with any honestie flee, by reason of the slow pace and unswiftnesse of those heauie Beasts. In this sort was king Roderike pompously caried in his horse, following during the battailes foughten in seven dayes space. But on the eight day, seeing things brought to the last pushe and to stand vpon fire and seuen, of or on, he himselfe with others determined to fight it out valiantly: and therfore mounted vpon an excellent couragious courser, called Orell, and animating his souldiours with a most vehement and pitthe oration boldly gaue the charge vpon his enemies. But when he saw the fronte of his battaile to shrink, he departed aside vnto a little hill harde by and stripped himself out of all his royal Robes: and from thence beholding the mercurielle slaughter of his men on euery side, moued with repentance, because he knew himself to be the cause & occasioner of all this mishap, chaunged himselfe into another weede and fled into a desert of Lusitanie, where he found a certaine holy man, lyuing solitarie, with whom he passed the rest of his life.

Howe whereas it is reported and written that he followed a Starre or a messenger of God which conducted and guided him in his way: it may be so, and the same hath also happened to others. But it may aswell also be understood of a certaine secrete Starre mouing and directing his will.

And

The first Booke

And whereas they say he was put by that holy man into a Cause of hoale and a Serpent with hym that had two heads, which in two dayes space gnawed al the flesh of his body from the bones this beyng simplie taken and vnder-
 staded, hath no likelihod of any truth. For what sanctity, what Religyon, or what pietie, commaundeth to kyll a penitent person, and one that seeketh comfort of his afflicted mynd by amendment of life, with such horrible tormētts and straunge punishment? Wherefore I woulde rather thinke it to be spoken myttallie, and that the Serpent with two heads signifieth his sinful and gylty conscience, which tormenteth & disquieteth those that haue perpetrated any heynous offence, as though it were the Furies of hell, as the Poetes haue foygned of Orestes and others. Where therfoze in that place he died, and certaine yeres after, his Sepulcher or Tombe was founde at Viseo in Portugall with this Epitaph or superscription vpon it.

Here lyes the Corps of Roderick, late King
 Of Gothes, accurst and fraught with furie dire:
 Whose sensuall raigne brought dule and deadly sting
 To Spanish soyle: because of Iulians yre,
 Which would not be appeasde till he had wrought
 The Foyle of strife, and brought all thinges to nought.

All mad with rage and spightfull rancours moode
 By deuilish fate incensde: Gods heastes despiſde,
 His faith renounced, religion eke withſtoode,
 A foe to frindes, his Countreies wracke deuſde:
 Vnto his Lorde an arrant traytous elfe,
 A murthrous wight, and cruell toward hymselfe.

Embrued with gylt, for sheadding Christen blood
 Which by his driftes were brought to fatall end,

AN

Of the Saracen Historie. 31

*An Homicide, of mangling Butchers broode
 Did ruyne to his native soyle pretend.*

*His memorie shall dye with men for eyes,
 His name shall rotte, as doth his Corps in clay.*

In this battayle all the men of Armes and Gentle-
 men of the Goches were slayne and the whole power of
 Spayne bitterlie ouerthrowne. Of the Gothicall Army
 there slayne, the number was infinite, but of the
 Saracenes onely twenty thousande: which happened be-
 cause the factious rout of Iulian which had al the Armour
 and defence of the Realme of Spayne toke parte with
 them. And the multitude of them was very great: but
 they which fought on the Kinges side were in a manner
 all vnarmed and naked men. A few escaping by syght
 ranne whither fortune lead them and saued themselves.
 They which were coming out of forreine prouinces to
 ayde the King, hearing of this lamentable discomfiture,
 ioyned sydes with them that were fled to Egicia, and en-
 battayling themselves againste the Saracenes which fol-
 lowed the chase, and pursued the poore vanquished flēts,
 set vpon them with a fierce recharge: fighting (lyke eigre
 Lyons robbed and bereft of their whelpes) manfully dis-
 comfited the vauntgard of their Cneimies Armye. But
 beyng not hable to sustayne the force of Iulians battayle
 which were strong men and wel armed, they were faine
 to retyre into the Citie. Tarife encamping hymselfe
 there, where now at this daye the Wall of Tarif is, and
 thence geauing assault to the Citie, with little ado swanne
 it. Which done, by the counsell of Iulian, he deuidd his
 host into many braunches, assignynge vnto every parte
 such Capitaines as he thought fittest: ymagining yea not
 doubtyng but the Chistians befoze they coulde take any
 counsell what way were best to follo w or be able to ga-
 ther anye moze polwer, might be oppzessed and all at
 once

L

The first Booke

once disperced whersoever they could be founde. The Sonnes of Vitzia and Byshoppe Opasius were appointed Capitaynes ouer them. One Host addrested themselves toward the conquest of Malacca (now called Malaga) a Host of haue of Betica by the midland sea, which to be speedely taken, was much for their behoofe & aduantage. An other marched to sack Corduba, ouer whom was Chieutaine, a certayne chryistian hauing a litle before renounced his Chyistianitie and Saracenyzed, whose name was Mageitar. And the thirs was conducted by Tarife himselfe, which toke the way to the Citie Mentesia, adtoyning to that part of Aquitania, which lyeth hard by the Pyrenes and is called Guienne or Gascoigne. And subuerting that Citie (which chose rather to be bitterly ruyated then to be come vassall vnder Saracenicall slaueerie, he discompted to Toledo, wanne it, and after that, Gaudalagiar & Medina Almeide, which Citie was so named of a pretie big Table made all of one greene pzeious stone like an Emeraulde, found in it. When he toke the strong citie of Amaia, wherin was kept al y treasure for y wars.

After this he inuaded the Region called Goticci Campi, toke by surrendrie the Cities Asturica & Gigion (wher of Mugnuza a Gothian was Captaine) and subiugated Gatalonia, being ayded by Mugnoces Prince of Cerdania, who also was a Gothian bozne. Wherefore the Saracenes made him Ruler of all the places confininge to Cerdania. An other Army, hauinge wonne Granada, marched to subdue Nurtia and Horiuela, where there was a bloody battaile foughten betwene the Chyistians and the Saracenes in the plaine Fielos which are to this day thereof called sangonarij: in which conflict (the Saracenes gettinge the vpperhand) the citie yalbed. After this, the same host remoued to Valencia, and discomfiting y Valentians yssuing out of the towne to fight when they saw the citie strongly fortified & rampiered w walls and

Of the Saracen Historie. 32

and ditches they toke it by surrendrie, with this condition, that the Chyistians should be permitted to haue in it one Temple to inhabit, which was Saint Basil his Colledge, now at this day called Saint Barptolomewes. All the rest they dedicated to that Idolatrous verlet, their Prophet Mahomet, sauing onely that Temple, which stode in the Figge market, where holie Vincent was martyred, which was afterwarde an Hospital of chyistians. The citie was peckered & peopled with Mozes, albeit the Iews were suffered to remayne still in it, and a few chyistians, which dwelt in S. Basilles colledge. Which y inhabitants of Puigum, a towne of Enesa, hearing, wher ther was an other colledge of S. Basill, left their homes & fled, burying their great Well & a certaine Marble Image in y churche in hope one day of a returne. Whither the saracenes sent people of their owne to inhabit vnder the conduct of cebola: wherof the same towne Puigum was afterwarde called Cebola: who also builded an other litle towne of the same name. And thus valencia, Sogorbes, Tortosa, Lerida, Barcinon & Sarragoza with al Spayne, was brought vnder the power and iurisdiction of the Saracenes. But Tarracon because it long resisted & stoutly stode at defiance w them, they bitterly subuerted & rased, which was afterwarde new builded by Bernhard Metropolitane of Toledo, at y comandement of Urban y second of y name pope of Rome, in y yere 1090. By this meanes, al spaine in y space of xiiij. yeres was subdued: which was a thing easie to be done, considering y y people wer cleane without armour, weapon, munition or Capitaine, & Opasius Metropolitane of Syuile euer exhortinge them to yeld, promysing vnto them y they should quietly enioye their religion & lawes as they had before done, whiche promise was not obserued, nor kept sauing in a few places, as at valencia, Siuile, and Toledo, in which they left certaine temples for the Chyistians to inhabite.

Alj

Wher

All Spayne
conquered
by Saracenes.

The first Booke

Whereupon yet to this daye, in the chiefest Cathedrall Church of the Citie, the rites and diuine service among them celebrated, is Mozarabick, that is to say, mingled with Arabian: which was allowed and confirmed by the Bishops of that time, according to the order and institution of Saint Leandre.

After these victories, the number of the Saracens daily encreased in Spaine, in so much that the Spanyardes then changed not onely their religion and maners, but corrupted their language, and the names of their Cities, Townes, Hilles, Rivers and all other places were likewise altered. Albeit many of them fled into Fraunce, England, Italic and Grecia, to craue ayde of other Christian Princes. Some others planted themselves in that part of the Pyrenes that lyeth out into Asturia and reacheth within the Aquitanicall Ocean. And they whiche remained still with the Saracens, had in euerie place, their Prelates and Pastours, much deuout and holy. But the first recovery and helpe of Spaine, sprang by among the Asturians. Which Countrey not only remayned safe and undiminished of that Barbarous Nation, but also was the first that stopped their lewde inuasions, and there was the auncient and native language of Spayne conserued. Which thing that it maye the better be vnderstande by what meanes it happened, we must briefly describe the whole tract and situation of the Pyrenes. We said before that Spayne was in forme of a Cheroneuse or almost as a Islande. enuironed with Sea on euery side, sauing onely in one place. The southerly parte whereof, ioyneeth to Fraunce by a narrowe portion of lande that lyeth betwene two Seas, and the Pyrenes Mountaines lying a long from the Sunne rising in Winter, to the setting of the same in Summer, enuiron it about like a wall. The breadth of the Isthmos or narrow trench of land lying betwene the two Seas, being one distant but a litle from the

Of the Saracen Historie. 33

the other is about CC lxx. Myles. But the Pyrenes mountaines stretch in length a great way further. For when they come to the angle and as it were into a Baye of the Cantabrique Ocean, which lyeth on the southerly syde of Spayne, they stretch out in length a great waye into the Equinoctiall West: and keeping of the Sea Cantabricum from the southerly part of Spayne, stretcheth even into the plaine Ocean, that hemmeth in all the West parte of Spaine. That part of these Mountaines that lyeth toward Fraunce, is altogether barraine and unfruitful: but that part which is next Spayne, is full of trees, and well peopled with many townes and villages. We will therefore beginne our description of them, at the Ocean, where they ioyne in Spayne to the region called Guipuzque, but in Fraunce they border vpon the confines of the Vasconians. On the syde of Spayne there is Stephens vallay, about the which are Befaca and Guciutha, townes of the Vardulians, consynnyng vpon the region of Nauarre & containeth Cantabria and Asturia: then are there other smaller hilles lying out from the Pyrenes, within which are contained Basse and Squa, which doe make the ballayes Rocida or Ronus: on Fraunce side, nere to the confines of the Vasconians, is Iean Pedeportesburie, a strong & well fortified place. Nere to the balley Rocida, & arme which before was talked of, is from them let into the Ocean, reaching and extending to the mayne Sea through Gallicia or the Gallecians & the Asturians. But from the balley of Rocida, Castwarde, they make a balley called Salazar, wherein standeth a towne called Ociogavia: then Ronceuall wherein is Isaua: and the frontiers of the Kingdome of Tarraconensis & Nauarre which was once called Nagiera. Next Fraunce are the townes of Biern. Now foloweth the hill of Camfrank: whereunto in Fraunce is nere ioyning the countrey of Peiraner & Vrdos, in Spain Villa noua, an auncient & noble Citie, Iaca, Saint Christsburie,

The first Booke

stinesburie, and Iean Pigniasburie: and in the same tract, lower is y Mount Aragon. Hofca, and frō them, the Oc-
cetanes and Cæsaragusta now at this day called Sara-
goza. Out of the Mount that lieth ouer Saint Christines
springeth the Ryuer Aragon: and because out of the most
taines of Ronceuall there springeth an other little Ryuer
of the same name, called the lesse Aragon or Subordam,
therefoze thys is called the greater Aragon: and the
whole region lying betwene them, was of them called
Aragonia. There followeth in the Pyrenes a hill named
Gauas, abutting on Fraunce syde, bypon Larount a coun-
trei of the Bigorians, and on Spaynes syde, on the coun-
trei of Tania. In which Countrey are the towne Sal-
lent, Saint Helens, and Biesca. Out of the hill Gauas,
springeth a Ryuer named Galleus, which hauing bys
course through the valley Tania, falleth into Iber nere
to the Citie Saragoza. Then is there nerte, the Cragge
of Horca, the steepest and roughest of them all, on which,
on Fraunce syde consyneth the Countrey of Arne, and
on that side towarde Spaine the same valley Tania, then
the Clines of Tarla, from whom springeth the riuer Ara,
which afterwarde runneth into the ryuer Cinca nere to
the towne Iuza, hauing on Spaines side the valleyes of
Brote, and on Fraunce Votcia a valley of Guyenne. In
the valley of Brote are these towne folowing: Torla, Bro-
tum, Oto, Linares, Faulum, Bresse, Sarbise, Aierue, La-
resitalla, Scartinum and Giasa. Then foloweth the cra-
gie mount of Bielsa, from which a part of the Ryuer Cin-
ca springeth, and the valley of Bio: and belowe, in this
same very tract is the region Sobarbria: then in the Py-
renes, the vale Gistau, out of whose Hilles springeth an
other Braunche of the ryuer Cinca, which hauing bys
course through Sobarbria, is augmented by receauing in-
to it the ryuer Segre nere to a towne called Scarpe, and
then falleth into Iber nere Meschinentz.

The

Of the Saracen Historie. 34

The chiefest towne of fame in the valley Gistau are
these: Gistaine, Senias, Serbetum, Iean Carauelsburie,
Plannium, Poma, Gistaina, Cerquetum, Lamian, Ca-
talaigna, Badaine. Then is there mozeouer in the Py-
renes the valley Bonasia, and the longe region of Ri-
bagorge: wherein are Gabaleria, Grausium, Benauarre,
Peralc and Paniello. Then are the Hilles of Castrum
Leonis, under whome is the valley Aran or Fiscalia,
which bath in it these towne: Biolla in Fiscalia, Lardies,
Vorastrum, Saint Iustus, Ligarre, Aretiza, Sciabierre,
Saint Olalia, Acortum, Tricase, Abese, Planell, Saint
Foelix, Sason, Silues, Spierle, Ascase, and beneath it, is
the valley named Solana. Agayne in the Pyrenes,
there foloweth Petra Blanix, Alcalauiacca, where there
is a passage through, the Wylls of Torre, and of the
Countie Pimorent and Pallasium. Under these, is the
valley of Henui, wherein standeth the Citie Valencia,
and Palasia: then the Clyues of Andoria, where there
is a passage oute of Spaine, into Fraunce, with a val-
ley of the same name, ouer agaynst which, in Fraunce
is Arachsum in Aquitanie. Witherto the places of
Nauarre.

Then a long Cerdania is the Mount Bellamir, the
valley Bibesia, the Mount Liuia and the pitche of Per-
sa. Then they enter within the Countrey of Rocilion,
ouer against the towne of Puigualled, Caudiese, Aro-
tonic, Galamij Fanum, Perapertuza, Eitor and Leo-
cata, where they pzeincdes & boundes end by the Me-
diterranean Sea. In the end wherof, in Spain there stand-
eth Salses a Castle impregnable, hauing win it a most
plentifull fountaine: where in tymes paste stood the Ci-
tie Gerunda or Girona, & ouer against it, in Fraunce is
Tēplū Veneris now called Capde Creux. Directly on y
other side in Gottalonia, other hilles do aunswere vnto
it, which may be called y lesse Pyrenes or Antipyrenes.

These

The first Booke

thyself of Rodericke, and what hast the Saracenes bled in the pursuite of their victorie, take his Sister with hym and departed to Gigion, supposing y place to be safer for his securitie. But when Mugnuza duke of Gigion, contrary to his hope & expectation had entred into league and was assistant to the Saracenes in their employes, Pelagius dissimulynge what he inwardly thought, and for the time bearyng two faces vnder one hood, remayned still with the same Duke, vntill Mugnuza fallynge soze in loue with his sayde Sister, and deuisinge whiche way to frame his plat to enioy his desired lust, sent her Brother Pelagius to Corduba, to consult & entreat about certayne affaires with the Saracen Princes. In whose absence, (bearyng her in hand that he would marry her) he had the spoyle of her maydenhead. Whereof Pelagius at his retourne begynne by his Sister certified, departed thence with her, into the higher Countrey til a time fitter to byng that to passe which he purposed.

The great
daungers
and aduen-
tures of Pe-
lagius.

Mugnuza greatly moued with his departure, tolde Tarifa that Pelagius intended somewhat against the Palatistie of the Saracenicall Empire. Wherefore Tarifa sent one of his Captaines with a band of Souldiours (if it were possible) to apprehend Pelagius. And now the Souldiours were come to Brette, (in which towne Pelagius was then resiaunt) who being priuely aduertised by a Christian, (one that was with them and knew all their counsailes) take his Horse, and ridinge all vpon the spurre tyll he came to the great riuer Rionia, take the water and swimme ouer. Whiche they that pursued hym, not vnderstandynge how he escaped, hee escaped their clutches, and came with heauy cheere into the Vale of Canica. Where by the prouidence of God hee mette with the Magistrates and Barres of many Cities of Cantabria and Asturia, whiche were going to surrender and yelde themselves and their Cities to the Saracenes.

Of the Saracen Historie. 36

ceenes. And when hee vnderstande the errand and cause of their iourney, it is reported that he made vnto them an oration in these wordes followynge.

Truely I cannot but greatly bewaile the calamitie of these times: & if it were not vngodly so to do, I would extremely poure out heapes of accusations against the fates and destinyes, which haue differred my natyuitie tyll these dayes, thus to see such slaughter and lamentable manquellyng of my deare Countrey men and (which is moze) such despight and contempt of God and his deuine Lawes. For of whom Gods honoure and glozy is now abayes moze contempned and derided, I cannot easelye iudge: whether of yonder barbarous Helboundes the Saracenes, who lyuinge in the foggie mistes of diuyls the darknes, (caste befoze the eyes of their mindes by that damned soule Mahomet) not knowynge the true God nor the honoure due to his holy name, do prophane the holie Temples. Wherein his praise and sacred wordes was wont to be preached, trayning vp yonge Babes, and Infantes whome Chyriste commanded to be brought vnto him, with their impious rites and diabolicall religion: and noursyng them in the filthye suckes of their detestable traditions: do perforce rauish and lyke deuilles pollute infinite Christian Women and Virgins y acknowledge the true & sincere religion of the omnipotent God. Oppressing so many as they may once get into their hands with most horrible and vnspcakable slauey, disposyng them not only of their temperal goddes, wyues and Children, but also takynge away from them their faith the rock of their saluation, & finally dimme the glozy of God with a patched doctrine of most Idolatrous blasphemie, byngynge them to euerlastinge perdition both of bodye and soule. Or els rather maye I iudge the same of you, who (despayninge of the goodnesse and mightye

This pithy
Oration to
his Coun-
treymen.

¶ If

power

The first Booke

power of God, whom you know to haue shedde his most precious blood for your redemption, by whom you know that eternall saluation is purchased and freely geuen to you and though whose bounteous gift you haue so many sure helpes at your most needs, putting you in an vndoubted hope of victorie ouer your blasphemous enemies (yet will seme thus shamefully and basely vnasked and of your owne accord to put your neckes into the halter, as though there were no more hope of helpe and better fortune, as though you had no God of whomne redresse and ayde in aduersitie were to be hoped and craved, or as though you had no fortified towncs and strong places of defence to repulse this present hostilitie. As though it were not a great deale better (valiantly fighting in Gods quarrell vnder the banner of Christiah faith) to chaunge this shorte and transitorie life with an euerlasting & glorious life, then to suffer these things before recited. And now behold, you which sometime were hable to encounter with the Romans being Lordes and Conquerours of the whole earth, you which could not be vanquished and subdued by them, that were the warlikest and stoutest men in the world, to whom Germanie, Britayne, Fraunce, Spaine, Grecia, yea Italic also the Queene and maiestie of all the world, all Europa, all Affrica and Asia obeyed: you which in no wise could be brought to liue vnder the lawes and iurisdiction of that very well gouerned Empire: you who alone remained unconquered of the Gothes, the fiercest wafters and crushers of the same Empire: you I say (the power of all Europa being yet whole, and nothing thereof lost but the open places of Spaine onely, which also myschanced partly by treason and partly by the foolish wilfulness of King Roderike, whose sinistre fate brought him to a destruction and end agreeable to his vicious life, who not tarrying for that ayde which was comming hable to haue scourged and discomfited those that were the enemies of our

Of the Saracen Historie. 37

our Countrey vnadvisedly ioynd battaile with his foes, and being disloyally circumvented by his own traiterous subiectes, receiued the reward and byze due for such rashnes and wickednes, which wilfull dealing of him being the head, must needs rebound to the generall harne of all the inferiour members of the common wealth) will now wilfully enthrall and make your selues bonde slaues to beare the intollerable yoke a people of all others most vile, most abiect, most basely and wicked. If God for our manifold sinnes and offences were so highly displeased, and so much tourned away from vs, that he woulde not admitte our humble prayers and requestes (which I will neuer be perswaded to beleue: for he is wont neuer to forsake such as be vnfainedly penitent, and tourne vnto him with true contrition of heart and newnesse of life.) Or if all the rest of the whole world were obedient to the Saracens Lawes, and that wee had no sure places or walled townes for refuge and succour left to resort vnto: yet were it much better valiantly to die vpon them then to see and suffer those thinges, which perforce we should suffer at their handes. Beate Creatures and sauage Beasts, if their whelpes be taken from them, most egerly and importunately lie in the faces of them that haue taken them: whom if they may finde and ouertake, they obiect them selues into the extremitie of any perill, contemning the sharpe edges of naked Swordes, yea death it selfe, for the rescue of their self young ones. And you which are men, to whom nature hath geuen not onely the procreation of children and a care to bring them vp, which she hath geuen to other Creatures aswell as to you, but also hath entirely committed to your charge a speciall regard to their education, who ought so to instruct & traine them in the true feare & honour of Almighty God, if they may be enfrained, choyced and made heyres of life euerlasting in the Kingdome of heauen, will nowe (alas the while) humble and

The first Booke

• subject your selues willingly and wilfully vnto the obey-
 • saunce of them which ere it be long will seduce and vio-
 • lently pull away your Wabes and childezen from you and
 • plucke the feare of God cleane out of their hearts. Where
 • is now that auncient faith, godly zeale and deuout religion
 • that was wont to be, when younge childezen not yet pas-
 • sing the age of xij. yeeres, and holy Virgins had leiser to
 • suffer all kinde of Martirdome and punishment then to
 • worshippinge those false putatiue Goddes, whom (notwith-
 • standing) most stoute and wyse nations worshipped and
 • reuerenced: Where be they, which haue aduentured their
 • liues in so manye mayne battayles for their libertie and
 • frædome: What souldiers, glowing Plumes, terrible Ma-
 • kings, sharpe swordes, bloudie Axes, al the sortes of sor-
 • tures & paines that could be deuised, in times passed were
 • not able to terrefie and turne Childezen from the true re-
 • ligion and worshipping of God, to Idoles and other phan-
 • tastickall trumperies of Sathans inuention: and now men
 • of growen and ripe yeres, men of all others most stoute
 • and valiaunt, yea the chiefe Princes of cities, vpon whom
 • the lyght of the sacred Gospell of Iesus Christ hath shyn-
 • ned and bene opened, tremble and shake for feare of a
 • lousse rable of Saracenes, and are goyng to submit and
 • prostrate themselves before them, without eyther bea-
 • ryng or sayng any weapon, or receyving sommonce of
 • any warre. But peraduenture you hope to speede the bet-
 • ter, and that they will shewe moze clemencie to you if
 • you voluntarily yelde your selues, and that all your Reli-
 • gion and Lawes shall remayne safe and in suche sort as
 • they did before, and that your Wyues and Childezen shall
 • not be constuprated, harmed nor vncourteously handled.
 • For with suche saye glosyng promyses these cutthroates
 • and villanous Traitors to theyr Countrey vse com-
 • monly to deceyue and enueigle the simple people: as
 • though there could be any faith in them which haue be-
 • trayed

Of the Saracen Historie. 38

trayed their Lordes, their Countrey, their friendes, and
 kinfolk, yea God himselfe their Lord and maker. Did not
 Valencia a most strong, maritimall, and famous
 Citie yelde vnto them vpon this promyse: and yet as
 sone as they were entred and had possession of the same,
 they eyther cast out all the inhabitauntes, or kyled them,
 or else by compulsion enforced them vnto their Secte. Did
 not Toledo the very same, and Siuyle and a greafe
 manye of other noble Citiees, which being deceiued with
 this hope and bewitched with these flattering charmes
 yelded themselves vnto them? These domestick exam-
 ples are sufficient to teache you, that it is a great deale
 better, valiauntly to dye together like men, and so
 much the moze, for that as yet thinges are not so farre
 spent but that they maye be recured and holpen. You
 haue bygge Cragge Mountaines for refuge, and in them
 some places inaccessible, you haue some Townes most
 strongly fortified, vpon trust wherof many times a smal
 number hath discomfited populous armies. And you are a
 sort of tall men, whom the nature of the heauen and earth
 hath made stoute and valiaunt, acquainted with labours,
 and hitherto invincible. Also there lyue a great sort
 der the Saracenes, whiche (I put you out of all doubt)
 will come fram all partes and toyne them selues to you
 if they once sawe you peape vp and auance your selues
 in this your so iust quarrell. Behynde at our backes is
 Fraunce, a Region at this daye most flourishing bothe
 in Chyualrie and skilfull Capitaynes, from whence (no
 doubt) we shall haue ayde and succour. For the
 Frenche will not any longer suffer this cowardly na-
 tion whiche hath alreadye encroched as farre as the
 Mediterranean Sea beyonde the Pyrenees, so saucely
 and malapertly to plaie these cruell Pageauntes and fu-
 rious pranks against the borders of their Kingdome, in
 suche sorte as they haue done to others.

And

The first Booke

And God hymselfe (if we wyl tourne vnto hym with a mendment of lyfe) wyl layde and strengthen vs, who being on our side, euerye one of vs needeth not to feare a hundred thousand of these blasphemous Crynneagots and lewde vyllaynes.

This oration sank so deeply into their hartes that being perswaded with the pittie force therof (for Pelagius was vehement and very earnest in his matter, and for his wisdom and sanctitie of lyfe highly esteemed among those people) they returned every man to his home and calling their neighbours together, tolde vnto them the causes of their retourne: to wylte, how that Pelagius (whose vertue and vnspotted lyfe was well knowne vnto them all, because as before we haue shewed, he dwelled long among them, myraculously deliuered out of the cruell handes of bloudy tyrants) met them as though hee had bene some messenger sent downe from heauen, who shewed vnto them what an heynous offence they shoulde commit, and what a pernicious acte they had purposed to doe. Wherfore not ceassing as well in open sermons, as in priuat talke to perswade the people to constancie and goodnesse, he was by common assent of all the people created King of Cantabria and Asturia in the yere after Christ. 717 Which done, they all got them to mourne Anseua. When the fame of this matter was blasfemed abroad and knowne throughout Spayne, all the Gothes that could any way scape or by any meanes shyft themselves out of the handes of that barbarous nation, conceyning great hope of liberty & good luck, toke them to their weapons and toynd side with hym, and such as coulde not be the same out of hande, with all care and diligence sought oportunitie and occasion how to sicke to hym.

Tarifa sent against hym Abraelm Aleamack wth a great Army, and with hym Bishop Opasius Sonne of the king of

Of the Saracen Historie. 39

of Egica, and Metropolitane of Syuyle, who (as before hath bene tolde) adhered to the faction of Iulian and other traitours of their Countrey. Pelagius hearing what great preparatiō was made against him, & seeing himselfe not of equall power to repulse so great a multitude, entred wth a few of his companie (but of the valiauntest among his whole bande) into a certain Denne within 5 Mount Anseua, appointing the rest to defend 5 narrow passages and streight wayes. Whither wth 5 Saracens were come, Opasius wot about wth many glosing termes to perswade them that kepte the streytes, to yelde them selues vnto the Moores, but when he saw his labour was all in vaine, there beganne a cruell and a bloudie bickering. The Saracenes shotte so many Arrowes and Dartes into the denne, that they seemed to rayne from Heauen as faste as dropes of water in a stormie sholwer, and to light among them as thicke as Hailestones. But God myraculously making their dartes to rebutte against the same persons that shotte them, there were so many of them either slaine or wounded that they were forced to recule and geue back. When the Christians vndoubtedly knowing 5 God was with them & fought for the, yelded most hartie thanks vpo their knees vnto his diuine Maiestie, 5 it had pleased him, thus to relieue & blis his poore afflicted people: which done, they boldly issued out, & utterly repulsed all 5 residue. There were slaine of 5 Saracens in this cōflict about .xx. 5 of the Christians very few or none at all: for writers make no mention thereof. Those Saracens which escaped from the battaile, fled into 5 top of the hill: which by diuine miracle being shaken wth a terrible earthquake, and falling downe into the Riuer Iua, running by the fote of the same hill, they were all cast away and perished. Opasius and Mugnuza two Archtraitours, as they were fleeing (for they went not wth their felowes vnto the hill) were taken: and

A miracle of God in deliuering 5 Christians.

Traitours cannot escape long.

¶

Mugnuza

The first Booke.

Mugnuza in a place called Olaglias was straightwayes by the Asturians put to death, and the Citie Gigion utterly ruynated to the perpetuall ignominie and shamefull reproche of the said Mugnuza Prince therof. What was done with Opasius, Authoꝝ make no mention.

When Mucas heard hereof, suspecting that Iulian & others of the same conspiracie, were priuie to the counsell of Pelagius, he straightwayes commaunded Iulian and Sisibertus and Ebasis the sonnes of king Vitiza to be put to death, and thus in the ende they receiued a iust reward of their treason. Which example so terrefied many of Iulians retinue and faction, that they reuolted from Mucas and went to the Asturians: and those whiche liued vnder the tyzannie of the Saracens, dayly by stealth and priuily flying to Pelagius, his power within short space was so encreased, that they which a little before were scantly able to defende their owne, now recovered many of those Regions and Cities which the Saracens before had brought vnder their subiection. For the Citie Legio (at this daye called Leon) was immediatly to them surrendred: so also was Rota, Mansilia, Canicas (commonly called Cangas) Tineum and many other townes of that Countrey.

The



The Second Booke. 40

Containing the declination of the Saracenicall Emphyre, till the beginning of the Turkes.



The Saracens in the East being in a great phrensie that their Siege certaine yeres passed layd to Constantinople was frustrated, and hearing that (Leo by whose only meanes their attempte was repelled) was now Emperour, leuped a mighty armie againe and deuiding the same into two parties toke in hand the same enterprise afresh, purposing then or neuer to bying their desires to a finall effect and conclusion. Malsamas the Generall of thone armie, transfretting with his copanie into Thracia, spoyled a great part of that prouince and geuing a sharpe assault vnto the chiefe citie and Imperiall Seat therof, encamped himself on the West side of the same Citie nere to the walles, where there is an Isthmos or narrow portio of land hauing Sea on either syde, & on that part he laid battrie. Zulciminie the chiefe Bishop, laye before the citie on the Sea with a nauie of thre thousand Sayle, as many do affirme. For the citie Constantinople being both very huige and beautifull and aswel by nature as Arte most strong and impregnable, standeth at the mouth of the Thracian Sea Bosphorus, (where Asia and Europa do almost ioyne together, hauing no moze but one small streit Sea to part them) by which it is emptyed & hath issue into the Sea Propontis: where there stretcheth out a little Cape or elbow of Sea full of wyndings & turnings in, as though they were Hauens. For which cause the place is called by the name of a Horne, because by reason of the seuen hilles of the Citie hanging out into it, it bath

Constantis
nople again
besetged.

¶.ii.

The second Booke

bath as it were many boughes or branches like y^e hoznes of a Hart. Along betwene this Cape and Propontis, there runneth a certaine hill, in forme like a Cherronese or half Ile, beying on euery side almost enuironed with water, contayning in length from the west into the East aboute thyrty furlonges, howbeit it riseth not greatly in anye height, but the ridges and clyues thereof do runne still a long Propontis. On the South side, where his forme is lyke a Hozne (which a litle before we termed a Cape or Elbow) it hath seauen Hylls annexed vnto it, of the which foure, do hang out into the Cape, and that which is washed with Bosphorus, is the greatest and maketh the base of a Triangle: for the forme of this Citie and countrey beying almost a perfect Ile is thys cornerde. This hath two Promontories, one lyinge towarde Propontis, west of Hebdomum, the other Southward, which defendeth the mouth of the Baye from the iniurie of wyndes, and is called Chrysoceras. From whiche if a streight lyne be drawen to the seauenth and innermost Hyll of all (which also defendeth the Baye from the west wynde) you must needs include y^e plaine champaigne of Pera (now called Galata) within the compasse of the Arche, made by reason of the continuall ridge and cliffe of the Cherronese. The length of that Cape or Bay is about 14. furlonges in the innermost part whereof, are the mouthes of the Rivers Cydrus and Barbysa: the latitude or bredth thereof is diuers and not in all places alyke: where it is mooste, it passeth not sixe furlonges, and where it is lest, not aboute thre. The streites of it are very narrow. For on the north part, wherein the towne Pera standeth, there hangeth out a Promontory into the South named Metopium and Cyclobium: and lyke wise an other on Asia side, directely abutting vpon the middle streites of the Baye, named Damalicum. This Cherronese on the west side, where

Of the Saracen Historie. 41

the mayne Land of Thracia lyeth, doth seperate this Chelboto or Baye from Propontis with a narrowe porcion of land lying betwene the two Seas.

The bredth of that same Istmos or narrowe share of Land, where it toucheth the seauenth Hyll and inner corner of the Citie, is fifty paces: and further beyonde, it is greater. Thus in this plot of ground beying a perfect Ile on all sides sauing one, is situate the noble Citie of Constantinople, once called Bizantium, ouer againste the towne Pera, once called Galata, which also maketh promontories into y^e Horned Baye. And in Asia there is directely ouer againste it, the Citie Chalcedon. The entrie of this Craike or Hauen in the narrowest places are enclosed and fast shut vp with a great Cheyne, which reachyng from the Tower Pharea to the Promontorie Chrysoceras is extended and drawn in length ouer to the Metopique Promontorie of Galata, where there is also an other strong fortresse or Blockhouse. The Citie it selfe is fenced and fortifyed with thre strong walles, two berye broad and deepe ditches, and many Towers and Bulwarkes beside. It hath on euery side a playne prospect. The middle part of the Citie ryseth vp a litle in height, by reason of the Hylls whereon it standeth. The whole circuite or compasse of the Citie is about xiii. myles.

Constantinople is in compasse xiii. myles.

This so noble, and flourishing Citie, Constantine in the place where before Byzantium stode (vnbauishedly y^e nough as the sequels proued) buylded, and translated the Imperiall Seat with all the riche Ornamentes of the Citie of Rome thither. For although the soyle where it standeth seemed to be a place most fit for an Imperiall citie, yet y^e disposition of the ayre and destenie would not suffer this citie to be y^e head seate & kepe of the Romane empire. For as not only euery Country but also euery citie haue their proper sates, manners, fashions and rites: so they

The second Booke

may not safelye be translated or remoued into an other place, no although the verye same persons and Lawes bee translated and remoued thither with them.

For the disposition and temperature of the ayre altereth mens manners, which being altered their desires and Fortunes are also chaunged. Which to be true, the ende proued apparantie. For the Empire being translated almost into the borders of Asia, the Emperors themselves and the Romane Legions were afterwarde chosen out of that Iouince, who being infected with their Greake like lightnesse and ambition, seditiously practised sundry factions amonge themselves, and effeminated with the nyce wantonnesse of Asia, were not of power to repel the incursions of so manye Barbaryans: when as in y^e meane season, Italic and Rome, the Quaitresse and Castle of the whole earth, lacking a head and hauyng lost the right vse of warlike discipline was made an open pray for all nations to inuade. And thus that Emperre which (lyke a good tree) in his owne soyle bare very good fruit, beyng transplanted into a strange aire and ground, within short time perished and came to ruyne.

But to retourne agayne to our purposed narration. Malsamas aduanced his power to besiege by lande, that part which we sayde stode in the Isthmos or streit p^{ar}ce of ground, betwene the Horne and Propontis, whiche could be oppugned none other way but onely by land. He because his purpose was, betterlye to disapoynt the Citizens that no victuall shoulde be conueighed vnto them, and for that his desire was to encroche as nere to the walles as could be, so politiquely lodged his Garrisons & Host on euery side that the fronte of his Armye, was as though it had bene a Hothe next to y^e walles, & thence as the Fields farther off from the narrow land, stretch out in breadth & scope, raught out along about the Cape or Bay vnto the mouthes of the riuers which we sayd had their

issues

Of the Saracen Historie. 42

issues & fallynge into the same. For this Host was merueilous populous, and so myddable, and therfore required great ground & elbowe room. From thence making many roades into the countrey adioynning, he lamentably distressed the same, and threathning utter subuersion to the Citie laide battrey and siege to it with Wyndes, Bastiles and all kinde of Engynes that might any way further his presence. On thother side, Zulciminie with his Hauye on the Sea enuironed the whole Citie, on that side towarde Propontis and Bosphorus from the narrow lande, to the Izmontooye Metopick, insomuche that to them that looked out of the Citie, y^e Seas Propontis and Bosphorus seemed all ouer to be covered with wodde lyke a Forrest. He slept no more in his businesse then Malsamas dyd: but with sea skalynge ladders and such Gunnes as then were in vse, assaulted the citie and most fiercely shoke it.

But the besieged Citizens were so vigilaut and so hardy w^{ith} that, that all their attemptes and deuoyzes were wholly frustrate. Wherfore seeing they could not this way p^{er}uenale, they thought to win their purpose by long siege and tract of time. But Zulciminie in y^e meane season died in his owne Campe, whereby there arose a seditious tumult among the Saracenes for the choyse of a new byshop, and for that cause the siege was for a time intermitted. At length Aumar the sonne of Abdimazid was created Byshoppe in the dead mans place, in the yere 721. The wynter was then so extremely colde, that all the riuers were hard frosen ouer w^{ith} yce. And also they had victuall dayly brought into their Campe out of Egypt, yet because the number of the men and Beastes was exceeding great and the winter extremely colde, a great sorte of them dyed, some w^{ith} colde, some for samyne and some of diseases, & a great rablement of them thinking to get some boty abroad, yssued out of their owne Campes and made incursions into the frontiers of Bulgaria, where they

The second Booke

Burning
Glasses.

they were of the Bulgarians incountred withall, and in manner all slayne, as they were about their pyllage. At which time, there were (as some affirme) of them slaine xxx. thousand. Leo the Emperour also was with them to bring, by an artificiall deuise of fireworkes, wrought by a Glasse, as Archymedes of Syracuse as yettime did. By meanes of which Glasse he set on fire the fleet of the Saracenes and so spoiled them that few of them escaped by burnt and they which escaped were take of the Grækes, by reason that the Captaines of them for feare of the fire, yelded themselves & fledde for succour vnto the Grækes. This fine inuention founde out by a certaine cunning Architect, meruellously appauled their spirittes: for y verie Sea about the Shippes seemed to be al on a light fire. Such another kind of burning glasse as this, wee reades was at Alexandria in Egypt in the watche Tower named Pharus, wherewith the inhabitants when they lyked, holding the same ful against the Sunne Beames, set the Shippes of their enemies on fire a great way off.

During this while, Mucas & Tarifa hauing subdued Spaine, began to bee had in suspicion by Aumar: Whereupon they came both together to salute their new Bishop and to cleare themselves from all suspicious crimes that coulde be objected against them. Where Tarifa accused Mucas of extortion and layde so his charge that hee had purloyned the Princes treasure during his regiment in Spaine: of which crime he being attainted and found guilty against the high Bishop, took such inward griefe that he dyed. In whose place, Aumar preferred Gizid to the Lieutenantship of Affrica, and Tarifa he appointed Regent of all Spaine. Wherefore Gizid with a well appointed shauie of thre hundred and fiftie Saile, with the supplie of the other Legions and victuall, made his course directly toward Constantinople: but hearing by the way tidings, how the Constantinopolitaines had consumed

Of the Saracen Historie. 43

sumed the most part of the Saracenes Shippes with fire, he durste not aduenture any further, but stayed vpon the coastes of Bithynia, robbing and makinge spoyle of the Country round about: In which place he had but a colde welcome geuen hym by the Romane Legions beyng there in Garrisons, who setting fiercely vpon hym, kylled many of his people and so sharred y resoure that they were glad to retire. Yet neuertheles the terrestrial army vnder the conduct of Malsamas, desisted not their Siege before the Citie, and yet they were so sore pinched with famine and hungre, that they were sayne to eate the dead Carion of any maner of Beast: yea they eat dyed ordure and dung, and are reported also, to be so nere dyuen that for very nede they eate their owne fellowes flesh being dead, such an excæding desire had they to conquere that Imperiall Seate and Citie royall of all the Romane Empire orientall.

Constantinople in the meane season escaped not free, but was plagued with as great mortalitye an other way. For the pestilentiall plague consumed wel nere .CCC. thousand persons. When tydings of these so great and so many ouerthrowes and infortunate calamities was brought to Aumar, he was therewith so dismayd that hee immediatly addressed his letters to Malsamas, with commaundement forthwith vpon the receipt thereof to retourne home with all his Army left aliuie. Whereupon Malsamas shipped his souldiours and departed. But there sodenlye arose such a vehement tempest and boisterous wynd, that all their Shippes (sailing onely tenne) perished in the Sea, whereof fife were taken by the Romans, the residue retourned home to bringe newes of this their heauy chaunce & myffortune. But Abdeluzite the Nephieu of Mucas, whome Mucas at his departure out of Spaine appointed his Deputie, marrying y Quene Egilona late wife of Rodericke, by her counsell pporlaymed,

Worthsome
famine as
monge Sara-
cenes

Great
plague in
Constanti-
nople.

Shiptwreck

The second Booke

med, himselfe king of Syuyle. Whereat the Saracenes greatly fuming & chafing, killed both him and his wife, and in his roome substituted an other of Mucas his kinsmen named Aiub, till such time as their high Byschoppe should take order for sendinge some other. This Aiub repayed and reedified the Citie Bilbilis (wherein the noble Poet Martiall was long before borne) ruined and much defaced during those warres, and many other Cities in Spaigne: and named it by his owne name Calataiub, which is now called Calataiud. But he coulde not performe his purpose so fullye aboute the rest, because there was diuers in sundry partes of Spaigne, which (vsurping the Kingdome) were obstacles in his waye. For whereas Corduba was the head Citie and Seate royall of all Spayne, and the Captainshippes or gouernance of al the other Cities and Prouinces were distributed and bestowed vpon the noble men of the Countrey, euery one imitating the fact of Abdeluzite, called themselves Kinges of those places where their auctoritie and Iurisdiction laye. Whereby Spayne was deuided into many Kingdomes, as the Kingdome of Syuyle, Granado, Gaen, Murcia, Denia, Sciacua (which was once called Setaba) Valentia, Tortosa, Lerida, Fraga, Saragoza and many other les places not of so great fame as these. which Kinges so long as they agreed among themselves, oftentimes afflicted Christendome with great ouerthrowes and oppressions: but after that they fell at discorde and intestine variaunce among themselves, they gaue occasion to the Christians, to recover Spaigne againe into their owne rightfull possession. Which thing was first attempted (as before we haue shewed) by Pelagius, who vsing his valiantnesse, wisdome and myracles to his best commoditie, and happelye taking occasion by this dissension and discorde of his Enemies amonge themselves,

Iuanne

Of the Saracen Historie. 44

Iuanne agayne many cities and deliuered sundry towne out of the miserable thraldome of their tyrannie. With hym did Alphonfus the sonne of Peter Duke of Calabria ioyne and take parte, being descended of the ancient line of Richard King of Gothes, vnto whome Pelagius gaue his Daughter Orismunda in mariage: and they two achieved many notable victories ouer the Pyscreante Moores.

In the East, after the discease of Aumar the Caliph, Gizide the Sonne of Abdimelik succeeded and was installed in the pontificate in the yere of our Lozde 722. In whose raigne, there stepped by an other Caliph and Gizid in Persia, whose name was Moalabs. Against whom was sent with a great army Masabnak, who banquished hym in battayle and subdued all Persia: and thus Gizid the sonne of Abdimelik, was the onely Caliph of all the Saracenes, who raigned thre yeres and then died. After whom, his Sonne Euclide was created Caliph, who entred the Romane Prouinces in Asia and Europa with a huge power: but within a short while, without perpetrating any notable exployte worthy of remembrance, he gaue hymselfe altogether to ydelnesse, sloth and voluptuousnesse. Notwithstanding, in the seconde yere of his Empire he sent Malfamas with an host againe into Cappadocia, who tooke the Citie Caesarea and Euclide he sent by an other way into Thracia, who hauing wasted and spoiled it, returned into Syria.

About this time nere the Sea coastes of the lesse Asia, the earth in the bottom of the sea burned, in such sort, that at the first there appeared nothyng but smoke, but within a while after such incredible store of heat burning Pumise stones (as though they had bene little hilles in the Sea) swam aboue water, that with the same Pumyses, al the shoares of lesse Asia, Lesbos, Abydos and Macedonia were full, and y Sea it self seemed all couered ouer, & a

Di

certaine

The second Booke

certaine Island at that time appeared and was discovered nere the holy Isle. After this, Euclide sent one Muauias and Amer with an Hoste of. 90000. Saracenes to bessege Nicæa a Citie of Bithynia: which being most fiercely and strongly with all arte and pollicie by them assailed, the Chyistians most valiantly defending, and beating them alwayes back with great slaughter and effusion of bloude, at length they raised their Siege and returned home without any harme doing, saving y in their retourne they tooke a little Towne called Arcum. Afterward y Prince of Gazaria, sonne to Cagan king of Bulgaria, warred vpon the Saracens in the borders of Armenia: and Gradack the Prince of Armenia & Media a Saracene bozne, being in battaile banquished and slaine, he brought those two Prouinces againe vnder the subiectiō of the Romane Empire. And in the yere. 730. Malfamas with a huge power entred into the Streights of Caucasus, and gaue battaile vnto the Turkes (who at those dayes were called the Hunnes Teutazites which is to saie, Gentle) a fierce & terrible people dwelling within those Spoutaynes. This bloody battaile continued a whole day, and many slaine on both sides, till night came and brake of their fight, vncertaine as yet to whether side the victorie woulde incline. But Malfamas retired into Armenia, so; he had now concluded a peace with y sonne of King Cagan.

During all this while, Pelagius hauing good successe in his Spanishe affaires against the Saracenes, the Tarraconians liuing in the mountaines, by the example of the Asturians created Garcias Scimenecius their King in the denne of Iean Pignia, called Panouio. And within a while after Pelagius when he had reigned. xiiiij. yeres dyed, in the yere of our Lord. 732. After whom his sonne Fasila succeeded, who in the seido yere of his raigne was in a wodde deuoured of wilde Beares, leauing no child behind

Of the Saracen Historie. 45

behind him. These kings appointed the chiefe Citie of their Kingdome at Legio which is now called Leon, and bare in their Coate Armour, a Lyon purple in a Shielde Argent. Not because of the name of the citie where their Seate royall was, whiche hath his name not of a Lyon but of a Legion of Souldiours whiche Cocceius Nerua placed there: but because they fought so couragiously and eighly for the sauegard and libertie of their countrey, as though they had bene most fierce Lyons. In the raigne of this Fasila, the Saracenes passed into Fraunce by that part of the Pyrennees that was in their possession by the Frankes a people of Germanie, who about 400. yeres after the incarnation, departing out of their native Countrey to seeke some other place where to plant themselves, had that part of high Bourgoyne next to Germanie geuen vnto them to inhabite, by Aetius a Romane Senatour who then was Prince of the Prouince of Gaule, because he would haue some strong garrison and defence against the Hunnes (who were then issued in great plumes out of their owne Countrey, and vnder the conduct of Attila, spoiled and wasted Europa) if they shoulde fortune to invade Gaule, which kealine is yet of their name called Fraunce. For the Frankes were the warlikest & stoutest people in all Germanie, inhabiting (as I thinke) that region & portion thereof which is yet called Franconia or Frankland: who afterward by little and little enlarging their ditton, obtained at length the regiment and Empire of all Fraunce, in so much that the name of the Frankes extended very farre. But when the Franke or Frenche Kings addicted themselves to an ydle and voluptuous life and degenerated from the former stoutnes and valiaunce of their progenitours, not executing the administration of their affaires in their owne proper persons but employed the same by vnderofficers of their Court and Graunds

The Armes of the Kings dome of Lyon.

How Fraunce was first named.

¶ iij.

masters

The second Booke

maisters of their Household, Pipine the first of that name Sonne of Arnolph Duke of Bauaria first attained this honour and dignitie by subduing and getting the vpper hand of y^e Lieutenants and Captaines of the kings Provinces, who seeing the King to be a weake and vnwarlike man, tyrannically ruled the Countrey according to their owne sensual lustes & for their priuate commodities.

Then in the raigne of Theodoricus the second, the excellent dexteritie and worthy vertue of Charles Martellus second Sonne to this Pipine was in that office very conspicuous and renowned throughout all the lande of Fraunce, in so much that he was accounted and taken as the Prince of all the people. At the same time, was King of Aquitanie (the called Gallia Gotica) one Eudo a Gothian bozne, whom King Roderik made ruler of y^e Province, but hearing of y^e discomfiture of y^e King his Liege Lord, he made himselfe King thereof. This Eudo whyle Charles Martellus was busied wth other warres in Germanie, began to surmise certaine quarels, which brake out into open warre with the French Capitaines of the places nere adioynning to the limittes of his Territories, whom (going about to defend their titles & rightes) he afflicted with many ouerthrowes. Wherefore Martellus tooke the matter in hande and warred against him. And at the same time the Saracens passing the Pyrenies, had taken Narbon, and in it shewed all kind of outrageous crueltie, because they woulde by that example make the countrey afraide any more to withstande the. Wherefore Eudo considering with himselfe that he was unable to warre at one time both with y^e Frankes & the Saracens, and so y^e Mugnoces a man in great fauour and estimation with y^e Saracens was his Sonne in law, he thought it better for him to make a league & amitie with y^e Saracens the with y^e Christians. Which after he had by Mugnoces meanes and friendship brought to passe, looking big vpon the

Of the Saracen Historie. 46

the matter and bearing himselfe stout by reason of the aide and succour, which they sent to him, he inferred much harme to the Francke Nation. But when he perceaued, that the Saracens fortified with their owne garrisons, and kept to their owne vses, al such Cities & townes as they entred into, he bega when it was to late to bessege himselfe and wishe that he had neuer attempted any such enterprise. For they kept Nimes, Mountpelier, & Auinion with all the places thereabout in their owne possession. Whereupon Eudo gathering all his power together to prosecute and drive them out, gaue vnto them battayle, wherein he was discomfited. Mugnoces by whose meanes and procurement the league and amitie was concluded, greatly complayned of the iniurious dealing of Eudo in falsifying his faith & infringing his promise accordingly as he had undertaken for him. Whereupon Abderama King of Gottalonia marching with an host against him, besieged him in y^e Castle of Cerdania: out wherof, Mugnoces for scarcitie of water escaping, & fleeing into thickets and hillish places, fell into y^e hands of another company of Saracens, who toke him prisoner & beaustly slew him and sent his head & his wiues (y^e daughter of Eudo) to Abderama: and thus all y^e traitours of their Countrey within short space, came to a miserable end and confusion. Then Abderama hauing dispatched and ridde out of y^e way all enemies y^e were to be feared on his back, returned into Fraunce, passed the riuer of Rhone, and destroyed many places y^e belonged to the Christians: and made such a slaughter at Arle, that a heape then made of the bones of the deade carcases remaineth there yet to this day in a place called Alies Campi. The went he with his army against Eudo who began again to gather more strength & make a new commociō. He besieged Tolose the chiefe Citie of Gallia Gotica: in which siege, (for that the citie was very well ramppered and fortified with Ditches & walles, and also

Fraunce thus
ruled by
Saracens.

well

The second Booke

Burdeaux taken and diuers other Cities and Townes.

Great Raughter.

well storied with Engins and munitions of war and with all sorts of weapons beside a conuenient Garrison of souldiours with all other thinges necessarie theie planted for defence) the Saracenes receiued great losse and were well payde home, especially by meanes of certayne Engins, deuised by skylfull arte of ingenious Architraces and by diuers other Stratagemes of warlike pollicie. Notwithstanding, Burdeaux was then taken and sacked of the Saracenes, and all the Inhabitauntes therein both man woman and childe vnmmercifully slayne and manquelled, and the Temples razed and laide even with the ground. Thence by the confines of Perigot beyonde the ryuer Geronde, they made inroades into the Countrey of Xantongue and destroyed Angoulisme and Blaye: From thence through Limosin and Poytiers they rushed into the Countrey of Tours, where they spoyled the Church of Sainct Martine, wherein was great forson and plenty of gyftes and offeringes that had bene geuen and bequeathed vnto it, and after ward set it on fire.

Eudo being soze afflicted with these vnmannerly deailings, and ouer to great extremitie by the Saracenes, entred into league with Martellus, and they two (with both their powers ioyned in one) gaue battayle vnto Abderama befoze the Citie of Tours, wherein they discomfited hym and all his host. In this battayle there were slayne CCC. lxxv thousand Saracenes, and of the French no more but .xv C. And if the night had not come vppon them ere the battayle was fully ended, the whole route of the Saracenes had bene at that time vnterly destroyed. For Abderama in the night season, perceiuinge how the game went, and what a moztall ouerthrow he had receiued, had no lust to farye and expect the hazard of the next daye: but trudge as fast as he could, by long iourneyes, with those fewe of his compaignie that were left and hable to folow him, to the Pyrences, intendinge from thence to retourne

Of the Saracen Historie. 47

retourne into Spaine, leauing behinde hym in his Tents all his carriage and stuffe for a praye to his Enemies. But the Nauarrians hauing stopped the streight passages where their iourney laye, killed them euery one. The next day as sone as the Sonne was vp, Martellus in good order marshalled his army and toke the feld, awaiting the commyng of his enemies. But when he perfectlye vnderstode that they were fled, his souldiours fell to the spoyle, which they found in the Saracenes Campe most abundant and plentifull.

After the death of Eudo, Martellus added that parte of Eudo his Kingdome, to his Emppye. For which cause Hunold and Vaifar the sonnes of Eudo, incensinge that part of Gaule called Narbonensis Prouincia (containing the Countreys of Sauoye, Dolphinie, Prouance and Languedock) to take parte with them, renewed the warre afresh with Martellus. And passinge ouer the riuer of Rhone, with most barbarus cruelty destroyed, burnt and killed man and beast, makinge hauock of all Townes, Villages, & felds y was in their way, without sparing either age or sexe. The chief burnt of which lamentable stoyne and furious immanitie, that part of the Allobroges (now called Dolphinie) specially felt, befoze Martellus could prouide or prepare sufficient powre to go against them. But when he was come, Visigot departed into the wast desert and wilderness whiche hee hymselfe had so made, and concluding a league with y Saracenes moze aduisedly and warely then Eudo befoze had done, that is to wit, by geuing and receiuing hostages on both parties, he eftsones procured them to come agayne into Fraunce: who now not with an host of bolde & tymorous, warlike and vntwarlike, armed and naked persones, one mingled with an other as befoze, but with army of lustye Serrisozs and picked souldiours throughe tryed by Sea and Land, well appointed and furnished with victuall and

all

The second Booke

all thinges necessary for such an enterpryse wherfoze was cheife Capitaine one Atine, entred into the Province. And taking Auignon by treason of Maurice Capitayne thereof, they appoynted that Citie and Narbon to be the principall holdes and fortresses of their martiall proceedings. Whom as they were boldly swarming & straying abroad & Country, as men fearing no daunger, Childebrand (sent for that purpose by Martellus with a great power against them) immediately at his first commynge compelled to keepe within the walles of Auignon. Auignon is a Citie standing by the riuer Rhone, and was at that time strongly walled, and well fortified with many Bulwarkes, Castles and Tyles, insomuche that Atine valgauntly and polytically defendinge it, (as he was a man both couragious and stout and also skilfull in the arte of Cheualrye) thought it to be inerpugnable and not able to be wonne. For he had placed his Garrisons on euery side where he thought most expedient, and had planted the walles, Bulwarkes and Castles full of weapons, Dartes and Engins to throwe stones into the throng of his Cneymes, beside wyld fire and matches to kindle Tozches and bzands to cast in their faces when so euer they should assay to enter. He had also manned the same wth hardy Souldiours, & saw sure watch & warde to be kept at the Gates, neither lackyng stoare of victuall nor any thing els that for the defence therof was needfull and requisite. Euery Capitayne, Centurion and decurion had their places and offices appoynted vnto them accordingly. He himselfe in person went about and viewed the watches, for feare least any thing by negligence or ouersight of his officers were amisse, a man that coulde well atway with labour, watching and hunger, and such a one as kept his souldiours in due order and dutie by his owne example, rather then for feare of punishment, any matyng and encouraging them to valgaunt enterpryses, and

Two halfe
aunt & full
full Cappy-
eaynes com-
pared toge-
ther, Atine
the saracen
and Martel-
lus & French,

Of the Saracen Historie. 48

and martiall aduentures. Childebrand lodging his camp nearer to the citie, gaue assault therevnto: whom Atine not onely repulsed but also enforced to discaampe & remoue his Armye furder of.

But when Martellus with his retinue and traine was come & both the hostes toynd in one, after he had surueied and taken view of the situation and strength of the citie and thoroughly vnderstood of the valiaunt courage of the defenders within, he speedely & with vndaunted courage setting forthward his matters, not only bzaued the as they issued out of the towne within the walles againe, but also went to the place where his army had befoze pight, & there strongly encamped he himselfe. For Martellus being a man singularly well skilled in warlike affaires, had vnder him in his army such capitaines and souldiours as had bene in many bloody battailes experienced & in sundry warres vnder him practised: furthermore very precise obseruers of martiall discipline wherin he himselfe had trained & instructed them. Who whether the Army were to be lodged and embattalled or the camp to be remoued, or themselves to be ranked & set in array ready for fight, knewe euery man by his office, place & seruice only wth a beck or a signe geuen them by their Generall. When their camp should be fortified for feare of being suddenly surpized by the enemy, immediately a man should haue sene some, wth al diligence busied in perusing & surueying the place & their General had assigned, some to see souldiours in good order, some to entrench the camp, some to pitch their tentes, some to place the watch and assigne them their standinges, some ready marshalled without the Trench ready to repulse the Enemy if he should make any sodaine irruption vpon the labourers. If case should be, for the Campe to be remoued, euery man semblablye knewe his office and dutie. If they marched out to fight, euery one knewe at his fingers ende, where and in what ranke or place hee should stand

¶ ij

The second Booke

stande so that the forme and fashon were tolde them by their Chieuetane, how he would haue the battayle ordered and appointed, and loke where they stode and set their foote in the sight, there would they rather haue dyed then to haue left it or thynke one foote backe, so desirous were they to wyne praise and glorie. If they should besiege any towne, some brought the scaling ladders, some Turrettes, some Bastyles and clymbing byldges surmounting the height of the Towne walles, striding who should first goe vp and mount vpon the walles. When they had got the Towne, they neuer bzake their aray for any pyllage or spoyle, nor for any grādynes of bootie and praye, they neuer ceased to occupez their blades and lay about them with their falcions, till they had thoroughly ouercome all such of their enemyes as would not deliuer their weapons.

With such a godly trained host, Martellus aduancing his Standard and appoaching his enemyes, while the anger of his Shouldours was hoate and the courage of their mindes yet freshe & vnappaulled, as one that well knew the nature of his Countrey men, who at the first bzunt as long as an iniurie is fresh in memozye and their mindes with venturous anymositie and hope of victorie, goggled are most fierce and hardie: but within a shorthe while if the warre continue any thing long, their former heat forwarde will be straightwayes abated and tourned into such keye colde quietnes that whereas afore they seemed Lyons, then would they bee as meeke and tractable as Lambes, geuing therefore no time of rest to his Shouldours, but onely so much as nedes must be had to refresh their bodies, with meate, dzinke and slepe, he softened the bloudie blast to the battaile, and gaue them a signe couragiously to giue the onfet but first he whetted them and stirred by their stomaches with this Oracion following.

38

Of the Saracen Historie. 49

If your valiaunt hearts (most louing Shouldours and felowes in Armes) were not sufficiently already to me knowen by the manifold aduentures and perilles in my companie to your perpetuall praise exployted, or if our enemyes were vnto vs strange & vnknewen then would I go about with many wordes to incense and picke you forward: but sithens I haue experimented and tryed you in so many battayles inuincible, & that of late yeres you easily vanquished this very same enemye, (few of them left a liue) at what time they invaded the whole Realme of Fraunce with a farre greater armie then they haue now, in hope to haue enioyed the Emperre & Domintion thereof to themselves: I well see that I haue no neede to stande long in putting you in hope of victorie, which I perfectly know to be already most certain in your hands, whereof the manifold examples of so many famous battailes happily and victoriously vnder our leading & conduct by you atchieued, may put you in an vndoubted assurance. Unless peraduenture some will thinke it to be a harder matter for vs now to ouercome these fewe (which like fearefull Hares) hyde and include themselves within walles: then it was for vs heretofore in the Countrey of Tours, to discomite the whole power almost of all the Orient. As though Walles were of more force in Warres, then foure hundred thousand fighting men, whose swordes and armour if they had bene layd together in one heape, had bene hable to haue compassed this Citie about wyth a hygher and thicker bulwarke then these Walles which you see are. Men (beloue me) seeke their defence not in Walles but in their weapons. Whereas they which put their trust in Walles, when they be bygnen to that pushe that they see themselves ouercome, their heartes taylor them, they runne away lyke the fearefull Deere, eyther casting downe their weapons, or else stande still dismayed

P.iii.

and

The second Booke

and amazed lyke sheepe. Advertise your selues therfore
to the assaulte lyke men, assuring your selues to synde
suche great plentie of spoyle therein, that you shall fare
the better all the dayes of your liues. Daunt and oppresse
yonder obious and vile generatio y are included in hoales
& denues like birdes in a cage. Take your former bigour
and accustomed stomacks vnto you, and knowe ye y I am
he, which (ouer & beside their share and botie of y spoyle)
will amply w my owne hands reward all them y in this
assault shal behaue theselues valiauntly. I my selfe will
not start one fote fro you, but will helpe you not only w
my aduise and pollicie, but also w doughtie blowes given
with mine owne arme as I am wont alwayes at a pinch
to do where I see neede. I wil be (I say) both the witnesse
bearer and the Judge of your valiaunce on euery side, and
wil see you to suffer no woise extremitie, and wrong, the
I my selfe wil be content to participate with you. Auance
I say once againe, mount vp liuely vpon yonder wall,
(which done) you shalbe sure to be celebrated and renowne
med of all men, as they that twyse, haue deliuered and
protected their Countrey of Fraunce out of the thral
dome of a blasphemous Crie of cursed Sathanistes.

When he had made an ende, the Souldiours al toge
ther gaue a great shoute, and then began the assault, the
walles were couragiously shaken and battered, ladders,
turrettes & brydges set vp, the assault geue in thre seuer
all places & the whole army diuided into iij parts, w
of one was lead by Childebrad, another by Charlemaine
the sonne of Martellus, & the thir by Martellus himselfe.
The Saracens rotolling downe great stones which they
had for the same purpose prepared, tumbled downe y sca
ling ladders & brake them a sunder, shot arrowes among
the Assaylaunts as fast as baile, & threw pots of scalding
pitch vpon them that approached any thing nere, finally no
kind of weapn was vnoccupied. Aline himselfe goyng a
bout euery corner, charging by his Souldiours on euery
side

Of the Saracen Historie. 50

side, & diligently looking y nothing were amisse, played y
part both of a skilfull Captaine & also of a valiaunt souldi
our: many, which of a high and haucie courage first scaled
the walles, felt y smart & reward of venturous audacitie,
and were slaine. Martellus seeing that his scaling ladders
were partly by his enemies & partly by the waigbt of his
owne souldiours climbing by thick and thre fold broken
almost all in peces, purposing to detruce and daine y de
fendautes fro some part of the wall, erected a Tower of
wood, out of which, he shot w certaine deuised Engynes,
great waigbty stones at the that stode vpon the wall and
in it he had placed a great sort of Archers, which with a
rowls kept y Oppidaness so streit, y they durst not stād to
their tacklings, nor abide vpon the walles. This Turret
had a brydge which w a certain deuise in it, might both be
hoisted vp on high & let downe low, vp into the which none
could ascend y stode on the ground. This Engine was co
uered all ouer with raw Ox hides & leather, that no fire
could do it hurt. This being w strength of mē set hard by
the walles (for it went vpon wheeles) y Brydge was set to
the top of y walles, and so within a little while, the wall
was ful on y side with French souldiours. The the bicke
ring being so soze & terrible on both parts, y it was harde
to decerne who shuld haue the victorie, at length fine force
and puissaunt māhod of the Frankes got the better & pre
uailed, who making a great shout, wet thoroughstitch with
their enterpryse, some ascending & mounting vpon y walles
by ladders, which conered & saued themselves fro harme
by holding their Targets close ouer their heades, till they
were gottē vp, killing or els throwing downe the defen
dants, that resisted. The rest being without all hope of re
medie & victorie, priuely shifted euery man for himselfe.
Aline w the head men & chief officers of his cōpany, em
barked theselues in shippes readie in the ryuer Rhone
for y same intent, & sayled away w the streame in safety.

spany

The second Booke

Many of them were slaine in the chase, many crushed to death with falling one vpon an other, and many swimming after the Shippes that were now departing and goinge awaye, were drowned and overwhelmed with surges. Atine with his Shippes taking the sea, made his course directly to Narbon, a wealthy Citie and well fortified, standing very commodiouslie to receiue into it ayde from the Sea, wherein was planted an other Garrison of Saracenes. Whereof hearinge Martellus went also to oppugne and besiege it. So that now there was no lesse bickering & contention on both parties for the oppugnation and propugnation of Narbon: the one side meaning to win the citie, the other not intending to lose it.

At whiche time Amorreus, an other Saracen Kinge bringinge a bande of newe ayde to succour the besieged Narbonians, was encountred by Martellus, at the ryuer Illiberis. Where betwene them was fought a sharp and bloody battayle: but in the end the victorie fell to Martellus, and Amorreus ballantly fighting in the batwarde was slayne with all his company, insomuch that not one was left aliue to carye any newes home of their vniuersall mischance and calamitie. When Atine vnderstoode of this discomfiture, he and as many as were with hym at Narbon shipped themselves and departed out of the French Province and Countrey.

At this time, when the Moores were thus driven out of all Aquitanie, nyne of the chiefe Dæres of Martellus his Host, valyaunt men and hardye, warred vpon the Saracenes in Gotalonia: and Martellus dyed in whose roome his second Son Pipine succeeded. In the orient Malsamas spoyling and depopulating the borders of Thracia (which now is called Romania) toke a stronge Towne of Cappadocia named Cursianum. From thence making an other biage with an Army vnto the Streitas of Caucasus, found the same so wel defended and fortified by

Of the Saracen Historie. 51

by the Vnnes or Turkes, that not daring to meddle with them, he rettyred back agayne. And two yeres after, another army of Saracenes whereof was Generall one Euclit the Sonne of Maunias invaded againe the Borders of Thracia, where after he had made great spoyle, he returned againe into Syria. In which Province many thousands of Saracenes dyed of sundry diseases. Neuerthelesse they abstained nothing the more from making inuasions into the Territoyses which belonged to the Romane Empire. For Zulciminie with a huge power the thyrde time pillered and harped Armenia and Thracia and toke the towne called Syderonium: after ward he went into Cappadocia with 60000 men, and at the very same time Melike and Bacal with a hundred thousand Saracens brake the fourth time into Thracia. But Leo then Emperour, marching with an Host against them that wasted Thracia, destroyed and slew them almost euery one. About this time died Euclid, in whose place was created Basilios Gizir the seconde, in the yere of our Lorde 744. Who for that he saw the Romane Empire to be deuised into factions, because Constantine Copronymus the Son of Leo contended with Artabasdus for the Garland, addicted and bent his whole mind to dispose and set order in the Saracenicall Empire. And because the Isle of Cyprus being then well peopled, byued seditious motions and rusinge disturbaunces, he sent the whole people thereof into Syria and left the Island without Inhabitantes. And when he had reigned one yere, he deceased. After him, Ices obtained the pontificate, who also dying within lesse then a yere, Maruane was installed and made high Bishoppe.

Pipine the second bearing all the way and rulyng all the rest in the Realme of Fraunce, the Saracenes estones passinge the Pyrenees were by him surpyled and taken tardy, and payde so dearely for their lustinesse, that so long as he lyued, the neuer durste any more attempt any inuasion

The second Booke

Charles

uasion of pillage towarde his land, Territoz of domy-
nion, for which valpance and magnanimitie, the French-
me, by the assent of Zacharie then Pope of Rome deposed
Childerick to whome the crowne of Fraunce by lineall
descent of inheritance belonged, and made Pipine their
king: and with him annoynted as hezre Apparaunt to
the Crowne, his Sonne Charles, who was after surna-
med the Great. Whom (afterward doyng many things
of his owne proper will and authoritie contrarie to his
Fathers minde and contentment, as though he had bene
already very kinge and in reall possession of the Regall
Diademe) King Pipine his Father exiled out of his sight
and commaunded to departe out of all the limytes and
boundes of his Domyinion and kingdome. Wherefore he
not darynge to disobey the kinge his Fathers decree and
indgement, toke with hym many of the French No-
bilitie which folowed hym, and went to Galasie Kinge
of Toledo, a Saracene bozme. Whiche Galasie vsed his
helpe, aduise and ayde in the warre whiche then he had
gainst Marfilius Kinge of Saragoza, a Saracene also as
well as he. In which warres Charles, being Chieue-
taine of all the king of Toledo his armye, behaued hym
selfe like a worthy knight, and many waies endamaged
King Marfilius.

Afterwarde fallynge in loue with Galiana Daughter
to the king his Master, aduentured and atchieued many
woothy enterprises & notozious Dees for her sake, name-
ly against Bramantes, an other Saracen King. Who be-
cause he would haue had Galiana to his wife, maugre her
Parents god wyl, besieged Toledo, and discomfited the
Souldiours both French & Saracene which serued vnder
the king of Toledo, tyll Charles ysuing out to recharge
vpon hym, coaped with him and slew him with his owne
handes. This boate loue continewinge for a time, at
length brake out so far, & vpon a certen time as & damsel
for

Of the Saracen Historie. 52

for her disport and solace was walkyng in the gardens of
baynes by the bankside of the riuer Tagus without the
walles of the cite Toledo (whiche are at this day called
the Palaces of Galiana) Charles no longer hable to quale-
fy his amozous passion, stole her away and fled with her
to Burdeaux, wher he buyded for her a sumptuous palace,
as lyke in all poyntes to the paterne and situation of the
pyncely Court of Toledo, as he could gesse, which palace
is yet extant, and called also by the name of Galiana her
Palace.

Maruane ruling in Syria, many sedicious mutines and
factious partakings chaunced among the Saracenes, & ma-
ny Tyzaunts rebelliously reuoluted, pretendinge title to
the pontificate. Whose names were Tebid, Dadack,
and Zulciminie. Whom Maruane as traytours to him
pursued, & toke Tebid and put hym to death: Zulciminie
hauing an ouerthrow, fled into Persia. But fortune smi-
led & fauored Dadack better then ether of & other twaine,
for he toynging battayle to the Sonne of Maruane, van-
quished hym and discomfited his whole Host. Albeit
he could not long enioy the fruits of this victozy, for win-
a while after, encountering to Maruane, himselfe in a cru-
ell battell was overcome and slaine. Constantine Copro-
nymus taking occasion and conceyuing hope of future god
lucke by meanes of & Saracens domestical sedition, infer-
red warre vpon Syria, & wanne a great part of that Pro-
uince. Wherefore Maruane hauinge now already gotten
the vpperhand of Dadack with al his Adherentes: tour-
ned his conquerous Armes to regayne Syria, and it re-
couered to & great slaughter & smart of & Christians. The
same yere, a litle befoze & Christians receiued this great
ouerthrow and discomfiture at the hands of Maruane, the
Countrey Syria, Palestina, almost al Asia, Thracia, Gre-
cia and Italic with many other Regions were terrible
shaken with a dreadfull Earthquake.

After

After

The second Booke

After this, more ruffling and commotion kindled in Persia, for Asmuline Prince and Kingleader of y^e Sect (first reised and excited by Mutar, of whom we haue before made mention who affirmed Ali to be greater then Mahomet) dwelling and living among the Corafenes, a people of Persia, though y^e counsaile & instinct of one Cataban, incensed and moued all the Slaues and Pezzants of the Countrey either priuely or apertly, by secrete conspiracie or by open force, to quell and murder their Masters. With whose wealth, the Slaues being enriched and made of great power, were diuided into two factions, wherofth^e one were called the Caismores, and th^e other the Lamonites. Now, Asmuline being Captaine of the Lamonites, subdued and cleane disperced the Caismores. Then beyng accompanied with his Lamonites and bys Counsellour Cataban, marched forth into Persia: ouer which Province was Lieutenaunt for Maruane one Iblin, who with an host of one C. thousand good fighting men and well appointed, resisted and gaue to Asmuline battayle. In which conflict, the Lamonites although they were a great deale fewer in number, yet hauing an indubitate confidence in the promises of Asmuline and in Cataban, whom they esteemed as men holy and replenished with propheticall inspiration, fought most valiantly, in so much that they discomfited Iblin and put hym to flight. Beyng then animated with so many victozies, gloriouly and happely atchieued, they were not afrayde to offer battayle vnto Maruane who had in his army iij. hundred thousand fighting Souldiours ready appointed in the feldes, nere to the Ryuer Zaban, whom also with all his army they discomfited. Maruane with foure thousand only of his company fled into Egypt, cutting downe the bridge where he passed ouer, that his enemies should not pursue and chase after him. But Saline the Sonne of Asmuline persecuted and folowed after him at his heeles and

Of the Saracen Historie. 53

and in Egypt in a bloudy battaille ouercame him, and thus was all the Maraunian Lynage and Pedagretw expelled. The remnauntes of whose lyne and Pogenie which had flourished and reigned so many yeres were disperced and scattered abroade, some fledde into Mauritania where being wearied, they planted themselves, and some went into Spaine. From this Asmuline afterward that house and family which now at this day raigeth in Persia, called Sophi is lineally descended.

After the death of Asmuline and Cataban, one Abubalan surnamed Muamat was Prince of Syria and Persia: and Saline of Egypt: and here began the first Emperre of the Sultanes or Souldanes of Egypt, which haue their imperiall Seate at Cayre. For by that name the Egyptian Caliphes would be called: which name (Sultan) by interpretation signifieth y^e highest Soueraigne Prince and King of Kings.

About the same time, dyed Pipine King of Fraunce, and Charles his sonne beganne his raigne in his fathers steede. And among the Asturians, Alphonsus the sonne in Law of Pelagius, and surnamed Catholicus succeded Fasila. This King recouered from the Saracenes in Galicia, Lucas, Tui and Asturica, in the Countrey called Campi, all that lyeth within the Ryuers Stola, Carrión, Pilquerra, and Duero: in Castulonia, Simancas, Duengas, Amaia, Caniciars, Alesanium, Transnerra, Supuerta and Carracia: in Lusitanie, Bracha, Viseum and Portum, (of whom Gallicians compounded together, whiche are a people of the same Province) all Lusitanie is at this day called Portugall. He possessed many places, as Alaba, Ordugina, in Cantabria, whych Countrey is now called Biskaie: in Nauarra, Rueconia, Sarracecaum and diuerse other places as farre as the Pyrene Mountaines. And when he had raigned eyghtene yeres he dyed, after

Which,

whom

The second Booke

whom his Sonne Froila was saluted and crowned king. This man gaue an ouerthrow to the Saracens which had inuaded Galicia, wherein he slew their Captaine Omar with fiftie thousand others of his company, and compelled Ioseph king of Corduba to flee: and brought al the region of Galicia into his owne rule and iurisdiction. He beyng afterward by his owne Subiectes murdered, Aurelius his brothers sonne obtained the kingdome, of whom we reade no notable exploit done against the Saracens, and he also dying within short space after his Coronation, his brother Silo was made king. Against him the Galicians rebelled, wherefore because he might þ better subdue and bring the to reasonable conformance, he concluded a peace with the Saracens. He reigned eight years and the dyed.

After this succeeded Alphonfus the second sonne of Froi-

which Province was Lieutenant for Maruane one Iblin, who with an host of one C. thousand good fighting men and well appointed, resisted and gaue to Asinuline battayle. In which conflict, the Lamonicas although they were a great deale fewer in number, yet hauing an indubitate confidence in the promises of Asinuline and in Caraban, whom they esteemed as men holy and replenished with propheticall inspiration, fought most valiantly, in so much that they discomfited Iblin and put hym to flight. Beyng then animated with so many victories, gloriously and happily atchieued, they were not afrayde to offer battayle vnto Maruane who had in his army th. hundred thousand fighting souldiours ready appointed in the feld, nere to the Riuer Zaban, whom also with all his army they discomfited. Maruane with foure thousand only of his company fled into Egypt, cutting downe the bridge where he passed ouer, that his enemies should not pursue and chase after him. But Saline the Sonne of Asinuline persecuted and folowed after him at his heeles

and

Of the Saracen Historie. 54

Ledum was fought a terrible and sharpe battayle, but in the ende the Saracenes were overcome, and of them were slaine. lxx. thousande, beside a great number which were taken prisoners.

While these garboyles were in doing in Spaine, the Saracenes in the Orient were deuicid among themselves by intestine sedition and ciuill tumulte. For Abubalan ruling in Syria, many commotions and uprores were reysed against hym in Arabia, by the faction of deade Maruane, affirming and proclaiming abroade that Maruane was not yet deade, and that therefore they put on Armour to restore him againe into his rightfull estate and regall dignitie. By reason of which rebellious stirre, many were slayne on both sides, and great depopulation committed.

After this succeeded Alphonfus the second sonne of Froila

About the same time, dyed Pipine King of Fraunce, and Charles his sonne beganne his raigne in his fathers steede. And among the Asturians, Alphonfus the sonne in Law of Pelagius, and surnamed Catholicus succeeded Fasila. This King recovered from the Saracenes in Galicia, Lucus, Tui and Asturica, in the Countrey called Campi, all that lyeth within the Riuers Scola, Carrion, Pisuerra, and Duero: in Castulonia, Simancas, Duengas, Amaia, Caniciars, Alesaniun, Transniera, Supuerta and Carracia: in Lusitanie, Bracha, Viseum and Portum, (of whom the Galicians compounded together, whiche are a people of the same Province) all Lusitanie is at this day called Portugall. He fortified many places, as Alaba, Ordugina, in Cantabria, whych Countrey is now called Biskaye: in Nauarra, Ruconia, Sarracacium and diuerse other places as farre as the Pyrene Mountaines. And when he had reigned eyghtene yeeres he dyed, after

which

whom

The second Booke

whom his Sonne Froila was saluted and crowned king. This man gaue an ouerthrow to the Saracens which had inuaded Galicia, wherein he slew their Captaine Omar with fiftie thousand others of his company, and compelled Ioseph king of Corduba to flee: and brought all the region of Galicia into his owne rule and iurisdiction. He beyng afterward by his owne Subiectes murdered, Aurelius his brothers sonne obtained the kingdome, of whom we reade no notable exploit done against the Saracens, and he also dying within short space after his Coronation, his brother Silo was made king. Against him the Gallicians rebelled, wherfore because he might by better subdue and bring the to reasonable conuersion, he concluded a peace with the Saracens. He reigned eight yeres and then dyed. After who, succeeded Alphonfus the second sonne of Froila, surnamed Castus, which was in the yere of our Lord God. 780. Against him, by the counsaile and perswasion of his uncle Mauregate, the Saracens made warre. This Mauregate had promised vnto them, that if he myght by their meanes and helpe obtayne the kingdome of Lyon, which his predecessours and Ancestours besoght hym had enioyed, he would paye vnto them yearly in the name of a tribute fiftie persons of noble race, and as many Virgins of baser birthe, with many other execrable and impious things. Whereupon, by the ayde of the Saracenes whiche furthered his pretence and quarrell, with all their myght and power, he forcibly got Lyon with the whole kingdome thereof and it intrusively usurped by the space of fyue yeres. After whose deathe, Vermudeces, Sonne to his brother Vimaran succeeded: who after two yeres, voluntarily and of his owne free will restozed the kingdome to Alphonfus. Wherby when the Saracenes vnderstode, they sent a great army agaynst hym, vnder the leaueing of Mucas: betwene whom, nere to a Towne named Lutum or

Ledum

Of the Saracen Historie. 54

Ledum was fought a terrible and sharpe battayle, but in the ende the Saracenes were overcome, and of them were slaine .lxx. thousande, beside a great number which were taken Prisoners.

While these garboyles were in doying in Spaine, the Saracenes in the Orient were deuised among themselves by intestine sedition and ciuill tumulte. For Abubalan ruling in Syria, many commotions and uprores were reysed against hym in Arabia, by the faction of deade Maruane, affirming and proclaiming abroade that Maruane was not yet deade, and that therfore they put on Armour to restoze him againe into his rightfull estate and regall dignitie. By reason of which rebellious stirre, many were slayne on both sydes, and great depopulation committed.

After the deathe of Abubalan, his brother Abedela succeeded, who was traitterously and insidiously murdered by an other Abedela, which aspyed to the Byschopprike, hoping to enioy it after his decease as hee dyd in deede. During whose Raigne and Emperre, the Turkeish broode and Nation breaking out of the Streites of Caucasus about the yere of oure Lord. 800. made roades and incursions into Armenia, and when they had piteously spoiled and sacked it, they returned into their owne Countrey. And the yere following, they issued oute in great Plumpes, and fought with the Saracenes so long, till many being slaine on bothe parties, the nyght made them to surceasse and make an ende of their battaille. Abedela the seconde of that name, in the eightenth yere of his raigne dyed, in whose place succeeded his Sonne Madi. Who without any notable thing in all his tyme atchined, dyed, when he had reigned ix. yeres, leauing behind him for his Heire and successour, his sonne Moyles. Who in the second yere of his raigne dyed: and in his roome was created

The second Booke

created Caliph one Aaron. But now to retourne to the affaires of the Occident.

Charles the
Great.

Ibnabala King of Saragoza, being expelled and driven out of his Countrey by the other Princes of the Saracenes in Spayne, came into Fraunce to King Charles, to imploze and desire ayd of hym, to reuenge the iniurie vnto hym done: and at the same time also, Ambassadors came to the same Charles from Alphonfus surnamed Castus, King of Asturians, to incite and moue hym to warre vpon the Saracenes in Spaine and to set the Countrey in god order, and by his p[ro]uidence to deliuer it out of the clutches of Wyzmannicall usurpers. Charles therfore gathering together not only the power of his owne kingdom but also hauinge a supplye of fo[r]aine aide, among whome were certaine younge Gentlemen of the Danes (whiche p[ro]fered their seruice to accompa[n]ie him, partlye for a desire that they had to bellicall affaires, and partlye to shewe their p[ro]uidence and couragious stomaches) with an Host not very hygge and populous in number, but yet competent inough and such as were skilful Souldiours and expert Capitaines, passed ouer the Pyrencees by Ronceuall without resistance or stoppe of any man. And entring within the frontiers and borders of Nauarre, pitched his Pauillions before Pompelon, the head Citie of the Kingdome of the Cantabrians. Whiche Citie the saracenes had strongly fortified with a mighty Garrison. And for that they had bene already sufficiently schooled in the auident tricks and feates of Spayne, they would no more commit the euent of their good or ill Fortune to hazard of one entire battaille as they had before done, but determined to protract and lyege out the warre with delays, tergiversacions and skirmishes where they might espie their best aduantage. Charles dispatched and sent an Herald at armes to sommon the Towne, & to know whether they would yelde or els abide a doubtful hazard

Of the Saracen Historie. 55

of war. They first, asked a tyme to consult among themselves what were best to doe, ere they would resolutely answere to the Demaunce. Vnto whom was granted the space of one day, wherein they demaunded and entreated that they might haue space graunted to send to their kings Friends and Confederates, and geue them to vnderstand of their distresse, so that if they were not rescued and the siege reysed within xv. dayes, then they would willingly yelde themselves and their Citie into his hands. Alleadging, that it should be much for the auaille and commoditie of the French, to conquere and wye the Citie, being vnpersuaded and nether by the Conquerour in his rage nioe defaced, nor by the conquered defendaut, throught desperation, blemished and disfigured. Neither that this taryance should in any poynte hinder his Prorocedings, but rather be greatly beneficiall for hym. For why, though he bent all the force he was able to make against the Citie, yet was it able to holde hym out for so many dayes as they craved. And furthermore that the French, if their Fortune were to get the vpperhande in fight of their Friends that came to succour them, should with a word onely commaunde the Porteculles and strong grated Gates of the Citie to be broken downe & opened for them quietly to enter, whiche should be much for the honour, Dignitie, and p[ro]fite of both parties: least otherwise, those innocent Cities that haue committed no fault, for whose deliuerie and regaignynge the French protested themselves to be come, should suffer such ruthless and iniurious examples of warre on both sides, as the nature and insolencie of a Siege necessarily bringeth.

Charles presently perceiuing all these protestations and surmises of the Saracenes to be subtilly and craftely deuised for none other entent, but onely to abate the heat and courage of his Souldiours (being now most sharply

The second Booke

set to haue their purpose) by protracting the time and getting longer day, would in no wise agree to graunt them any respite to make any further preparation and preparation for war, which might peradventure tourne hym to greater incommenience afterwarde, but immediately sendeth defiance againt them, and commaundeth bys souldiours to provide and make ready such things as to the battre and siege of the Citie were requisite.

The Siege of this Citie continued many dayes, and diuers assaultes fiercely geuen. The Assaillantes were not so busie without, but the Defendaunts were as diligent within many times yssuing out of their Gates, not after the Arabian guyse, but accordinge to the Spanish manner, armed with sword and fire, quick, swift, nimble and sobaine, deluding their enemies, with many stratagemes and subtyll policies, facing and shifting from place to place, pertermittinge no occasion that made for their purpose, dealinge euery where and at all times so deceinablye, that when the other partye thought themselves surest of their purpose, they were farthest off, and when their desires were likeliest (as they thought) to sozte to effect, then were they soonest beguiled and lykely themselves to fall into the lappes of their enemies: so secret and speedy, that they were many times in the midst of their enemies slaying among them before any man suspected their coming, killing them and setting fire in their tentes and gone againe out of sight, ere any resistance could be made or any time to go against them. They skirmished & ruffled wth their enemies, in a maner within their owne tentes. And although there was a band appointed at y gates of the Citie to keepe them from comminge out, yet (notwithstanding) they could not be so pent in, nor debarred from their purposes, but with lyke boldnesse as afore, they would often set vpon them, and by no means wolde be brought to kepe wthin y walls of the citie, til y same were thoroughly entrenched and rampired, and all their works within

Of the Saracen Historie. 56

within, finished to their minde. The did they stand at defiance valiantly, not as men defending their manhood with walles, but keeping & defending their walles with manhood. This Siege continuing somewhat longe, the other kings which were daily looked for to reple the siege, came in deed, albeit furnished with any host, able to fight a maine battaile, but euer as they espied any aduantage or occasion, they would make out Dimilaunces and light Horsemen by knowne pathes and wales, to annoy King Charles. Which Horsemen oftener by night then by day a little disquieted his Campe, and made some disturbance and outcries therein. An other crewe of them killing the watchmen & perforce making way through their enemies Bulwarkes and Fortifications, entred the citie, & greatly relieved them within, whereby they conceiued great hope of future successe. Charles wth a courage vnappauled and inuincible exhorting his men, tolde them that the victory was to be obtained with paines taking & vigilancie, that martiall prowesse appeareth not only in the encounter and conflict, but a great deale rather in good discipline and obseruance of martiall orders, not to be lulled in ease and securitye, bestowing the greatest part of the night in sleepe and bodily rest, but in studie and deuise for the achievement of their waighthe businesse, & in the day time incessantly to be busied, abstaining from riot & libidinous lustes & euermore abandoning idlenes and lingering of time. Seeing them further to vnderstand, y cages and walles wherin those Sathanistes had enclosed themselves for their safegard, must either perforce be broken in peeces & beaten downe about their eares, or els y enemies themselves to be tamed and brought vnder awfull obedience. Wherefore he bad them to aduance their standards & with banners displayd, to march againt the, & not suffer them to rest. Then was ther made fortifications & habiliments, to sette ech way and on euery side, whereby their Camp was kept both before, behind and on either side.

¶ ij

¶ Then

The second Booke

When they that fished and raunged out as thei did befoze, were faine to hyde their heades within their Foztrefse, or els were shamfully compelled to retire, and so the matter was brought to a perfect Siege. Then begatne there a sharpe and terrible battre whiche continued day and night without intermission, fresh Souldiours euer coming in the places of y weary, and fighting by course one after an other rounde aboute, with all kinde of deuises Engins, Ordnance, Ladders, Bridges, pollicie and valyauntnes, in somuch that y Saracenes courage being wel cooled, were now dismayd at their wits end, not hable to hold out any longer, but on euery side (so what they could) were by the valyant French Assaylaunts thowen downe from the walles or els slayne out of hand. Within the Citie also there was a great slaughter of them, vntill the King had made proclamation that as many as were vnarmed and without weapon should be spared.

King
Charles cou-
led the sara-
cens courage

When so, the Saracenes, euer befoze that time, choosung and accustomed rather to die then to yeld as long as they had weapon & Armure, theiue downe their weapons, and vpon their knees holowing vp their vnarmed hands be sought pardon. When were the walles rased and the citie sacked. From thence the Campe remoued and went to Saragoza the head Citie of the Prouince Taraconenfis: which beinge terrifyed and feared by the example afoze, straightway condiscended and agreed to accept the offers and conditions propounded vnto them, whiche was that they shoulde admitte and receaue into their Citie such as preached the glad typpings of the Gospell of God, and receaue againe Ibnabala their King, and hym to acknowledge and obey as their Soveraigne Lorde. After this, he went into Gortallonia, & compelled the two Kings of y Prouince (which were accused to haue expelled Ibnabala out of his kingdome) Aburac & Dauliffe to come into his Paullion with Offres and presents, & condiscended

Of the Saracen Historie. 57

to become Tributaries. Thus his name was had in feare and awe throughout all Spaine. But when he was returned home agayne into Fraunce, some write that there came out of Aphrica, one Agoland, sent from the high Duke of the Aphrican Saracens, who kept his Seat royall at Marrocco) with a mighty army, to recouer all such Townes and places as Charles had taken in Spaine: with whom there were many other Princes, Potentats and valyaunt personages. And that Charles (after many combates, darraigned and foughten with hym hand to hand beinge thereunto by hym chalenged and prouoked) fought a bloudy battayle with hym at Baion, a Citie of Vasconia, wherein were slayne 400000. Christians, and among them Myles Anglere Father to Rouland, a stout Gentleman and a hardy, who had the leadinge and was Generall of the whole Army. Notwithstanding, all was regained by the puyssance and prouesse of Charles, and other fresh ayd that then came euen in the nick of Italy to succour the Frenchman in that distresse. Inso-much that Agoland pryncely fled and conueighed himselfe away.

But not long after, hauinge repaired his army with a supplie of moe Souldiours, Agoland againe prouoked Charles into Vasconia, and besieged the Citie Geninum now called Baion the space of seuen Monethes, and departing thence was in the borders of Xantongue in a cruell battell ouerthrowen, after which discomfiture he fled back againe into Spaine. And hold that Charles (because he would at length bring his Spanissh warres to an end) to a greater army then any afoze, entred into Spaine, where after many light skirmishes, he slew Agoland in a notable battell: after which victorie he brought vnder his subjection and rule almost all Spaine: with many moe forged reputes and mere fables of some aduised, all which, for the truth and yniquelphod therof we do heare pre-
termitt

The second Booke

termit. But if any be desirous to see them, let them reade Turpine Byschoppe of Rhemes, to whom also I do referre you, for the trueth of this which we haue here last recited. For we doe not fynde in any of those credible and approued wyters whych wee solotoc, that Charles made any moe voyages against the Saracenes into Spaine but one, nor that they ever entred into Fraunce during his Raigne. But this is manifest, that Alphonsus King of Asturia, moued with the famous renowne of his noble Actes and invincible valiaunce, and for the common weale of his Kingdome and Subiectes, because he had no Chylzen of his owne, and saw that the power of that onely Region was farre vntable to beare out and maintaine continuall warres wth the Saracens, offered vnto him secretly by trustie Messengers and Ambassadors the Kingdome of Lyon, so that he would ayde hym against the King of Corduba, wth whom he had then waged Warre. Charles accepting this offer and condition, sent ayde vnto hym. Which composition when the Nobles and Pères of the Realme of Lyon vnderstoode, they were soze displeased and toke the matter grenouly, spighting (as commonly in like cases it falleth out) to haue a Portion hard vnder theyr noses to bee rulers ouer them, and therapon they compelled theyr King to starte from his Bargaine and vndo his League. And not so contented to leane, purposed also and deuised which way to dispatch and destroye King Charles and all his Army: fearing, least he seeing himselfe thus beluded and mocked would, reuenge this iniurie done vnto him. Therefore gathering and assembling all the power of the Asturians and Cantabrians together, and sendyng also for ayde to the Saracenes (in secreete wise preventing Charles) take and kept the narrow Streights of the Mountaines: where the passage & way lyeth into Spaine by Ronocuell. For Charles was

Of the Saracen Historie. 58

was retourned into Fraunce, and was now againe in his way going into Spaine, to reuenge this wrongfull dealing. The Armitie of King Charles was the at the foote of the Pyrence Mountaines on that side next Fraunce, in the valley (yet called Hospita) when there came newes vnto them, that the Spaniardes were comming in warlike maner against him along by the valley called at this day Charles Valley, which was a faire plaine Chapaine. Therefore diuiding his host into thre Battailles, by the fraudulent & traitorous counsaile of Galeró (as some call him Gane) who the enemies had corrupted with money, he appointed Rouland his Nephew by his Sister, commonly called of y vulgar sort Orland Duke of little Britayne, a valiaunt Gentleman and a hardy, to leade y forward, wherein he placed al the noble Estates & Pères of Fraunce: in y second battaille, he placed innumerable Gentlemen and noble Perceages: and he himselfe wth y third (wherein was the traitour Galeró) staid in y campe, commanding Orland wth the vauntgard to aduance himselfe forward. The Spanish army was embattailed in Ronocuell, expecting their coming. Upon, who the fronte of the French host geuing the onset, was at y first brunt so handled (for the Spanyardes had gotte the vpper ground and al y trait passages) y they were in woofe case which escaped their hands, the they which were slain outright in fighting: for they dyed & were quickly out of pain, but the other fleeing through thicke & thinne among y stones and craggy Clines & falling down fro high Rocks, had their limmes broke, & so continued for a longer season in extreme torment and agonies. Thus, Rouland & all his traine being wearied, what with climbing vp the hill, and what wth the waight of their armour were easily killed and brought to confusio. After the same maner also was y second battaille handled, wherein were y Pères of Fraunce, in whose power it is to create the King & decide al waighthe causes of the Realme. Charles

xii. Decrees
of Fraunce

The second Booke

Charles still abode in the Walleye, which for this cause is to this day called Charles Walleye, whither he had removed his Campe out of Hospita. Who understandinge of the great overthrow and losse of his Men, retyred with all speede againe into Fraunce. Alphonfus excused himselfe by Ambassadors vnto him, that all these thinges were attempted and done without his consent and knowledge, with whome Charles renewed the former amytie and league betwene them stroken and concluded. When deuisinge in his minde to procure an atonement and vniuersall peace to the whole world, sent his Ambassadors into Syria and Egypt, to conclude an amytie and peace with the Princes and Chiefe Rulers of the Infideles, to the ende that they should the better vse and entreate the Christians liuing vnder their subiection. Which he obtained, inso much that Aaron the high Caliph of Persia and Arabia) who not longe afore, rufflingly inuading the Prouinces of Asia that were vnder the Constantinopolitane Empire with CCC. M. men, had enforced and by compulsion dyuen Nicephorus the emperor to redeeme and (as it were) to ferine peace at his hands, by paying yearly an annuall fee in gold) from thenceforth not onely not infected and vered the Christians, but also gaue yearly a great Masse and summe of moneye to the reliefe of those poore Captiues that liued vnder his rule, and also sent his Ambassadors with great rewarde to King Charles. For when Aaron had with many overthrowes and pillages miserably afflicted and frustred the Romane empyre, surprised and taken Tyana where he erected and dedicated a temple vnto Mahomet & an infinite numbre of towne moe: Nicephorus seeinge his matters goe to wrecke, and distrustinge any better fortune, sent his Letters to the Arabian to obteyne and request a peace accordinge to the tenour folowinge.

Why shouldest thou bridle warre againste me

Of the Saracen Historie. 59

me and my dominions sythens I haue not wronged nor offended thee, or who they be that counsaile thee therunto, I know not, neither do I see any cause reasonable to moue thee, vnles it be peraduenture, because thou hast a delight and pleasure in murther, robberie and rapine. For that thou doest it for religion sake, thou canst not pretend any excuse, sithens Mahomet thy high Prophet, commaundeth you to vse and account al Christians as Brethren. Doeest thou thinke that Almighty God the creatour of all thinges and the staie of both the people, whome he hath created and made after his owne similitude and lykenes, is delighted with effusion and shedding of innocent blood? God forbid. For your Prophet Mahomet did not commaund you to offere vnto him any such sacrifice or satisfactorie expiation. Or else perchance doest thou inuade the territories and prouinces belonginge to other men, for some neede and want of syluer, Golde and such other thinges? But alas, there is no such store of these thinges with vs: yea all pzeious iewelless and wares that are rare and hard to be gotten, are among you in great plenty. But if there be any thinge in our Countreys that maye do thee pleasure, why doest thou not aske it friendly, and we will bestow the same vpon thee without delaye moste louingly. If thou care not for man nor any force, yet moste fall man can annoy thee with all, yet know thou that there is a God, which seeth and remembreth right and wronge. For sythens we be mortall, it is not comely nor fitte for vs to beare immortall grudge and endlesse enmities one toward an other, & in that point to resemble & imitate the Diuell, which euer spighteth at mans felicity and soulehealth and is at perpetuall warre with all mankind.

With these letters, sent not without rewarde and sumptuous presentes Aaron beinge appealed, sent agayn many presentes and gyftes to Nicephorus, & concluded a peace

The second Booke

peace with hym vpon a condition, that the Emperour should pay yereely vnto hym xxx. *th.* Crownes, and thre for his owne head, and as many for his Sonne and that he should not reedifie nor repayze such Townes as were rased and wasted by the saracenes. But in the performance of this agreement, there was les faith in y Greke then in the Barbarian. For Nicephorus after the departure of the Saracenes out of those townes, immediately re-edified and fortifyed them. Which dealing when Aaron vnderstood, he furnished out an other Armye into Grecia, which toke Thebes: and sendinge a *paue* into Cyprus, subuerted the Churches and expulsd the Cyprians. And when Aaron had raigned xxiij. yeres he payed his debte to nature, after whom succeeded in the Pontificate his Sonne Muamat. Who fallenge at mostall debate with his Brother Halad, and with him coapyng in conflicte wherein his side went to wyck (fortune moze fauoring his Brothers part) grete to a composition wth hym, y they twaine should ioynly wth egal authoryty (hauing both one and the same tytle of *kyll*) enioy the Empire. Then ther were created foure *lyzauntes* whereof one had for his share Spayne, an other Aphrica, the third Egipte and the fourth Syria and Palestina. Wherebyon, the Saracenicall power began to decline, & for awhile y assayzes of y Orient were indifferently quiete among the Saracenes. And Muamat the Caliph of Syria woulde not now haue his imperiall Seat at Damasco, but buylded a newe cite neere where olde Babilon once stode, and called it Bagadat, and it constituted the Pontificall Sea of Syria and all the Orient: For the Persians were yet vnder his ryle & iurisdiction. The Egiptian kept his residence at his Metropolitan Citie of Cayre: whiche was (as before we haue shewed) buylded neere the place where olde Memphis earth stode. Which after the Sea royall was in it appointed

Of the Saracen Historie. 60

pointed and kepte, so encreased, that at this daye it is thought to be one of the greatest Cities in the whole Worlde: the chiefe Sea of Aphrica was accounted by Elagleb to be at Caiozan, whiche Citie was builde in Affrica when Ottmen had the regiment and gouernance of the Emperye, and is distaunte from the Citie of Tunice about an hundred *myles*, and from the Sea thretye and fife.

Spaigne although it obeyed & had in it many kings, yet they all acknowledged the Byshop of Marrocco for their Diocesan: whiche is a Citie of Mauritanie Tingitana. He that gouerned Asyria was called the Caliph, whiche name signifyeth a succelloure: because he boasted and bragged himself to be the Succelloure of Mahomet. The Egiptian Byshoppe was called the Sultane, and hee of Caiozan, (lyke as the Assyrian dyd) named himself a Caliph: and hee of Marrocco by the aunient name of the Founder and buylder of that Citie, was named a Miralmumine. Under these, there also arose certayne other lesse Kingdomes in Affrica: as the Kingdome of Tunice, of Tripolis, of Algeria, of Oran, of Fels: and an innumerable sorte moe, lesse then these. For as euerye one was Ruler ouer anye Citie or Province. So he called himselfe Kinge of the same, and possessinge the stile and name thereof, as due by inheritance, lesse and deliquered the same as if were by hand to his Succession and posteritie.

But yet notwithstandinge all these Kinges agnized and acknowledged some of these forenamed Byshops: and as euerye one fauoured thys Byshoppe or that, so in hys quarrell dyd he make Warre with the Kinges of the other faction. Which sedicious discordes and multitude of *lyzantes* so appaired & weakened the power of the Saracenes that after the regiment of the aforesayde Byshoppes, they so decreased and theyr force so

so if

was

The second Booke

was enfebled, that at length the name of Saracenes gaue place and was almost cleane eatē by of the Turkes: and the state of their Emppye was at this time throughe the perturbation and hurlyburly about the soueraigntie, so obscured and vnknownen, that no certaintie in the succession of their Emppye can be had, [no not among their owne wryters. Peruerthelesse, wee obseruing the due order of tymes, will as bryefely as may be, compze hende all such thynges as are confusely wrytten by diuerse Authoys, concerning the actes and gestes by thym atchieued.

In the tyme that this Muamat the Sonne of Aaron ruled Assyria, and Michael the Sonne in law of Nicephorus (expulser of Leo out of Armenia) was Emperour of Constantinople, one Thomas bzued a great garboyle and commotion. Of whom the report and fame is tolde after two wayes. Some saye he came of a very pooze and bale Parentage, and that he lyued long tymes in much pouertie and indigence, faine to get his lyuing with his handie labour, and sometyme with seruile byndgerie. Afterward, abandoning his native Countrey and comming to Constantinople, was retained in the seruite of an Alderman of the Citie where the gracelesse berlet so much abused himselfe with carnall lust and vicious life, that he committed adultrie with his Mistresse, and dubbed the Alderman his maister, Knight of the common Hall. Which lewde pranke being detected and come to light, Thomas partly for starke shame and ignominie and partly for feare of the paynes and punishment appoynted by Law for suche as he was, fledde to the Saracenes: for whose diuelishe deuises he was as fit an Organe and Instrument as any in the worlde: with whom, he was had in a great credite, speciall ye after that his conuersation and behauiour a long tyme continued and shewed among them (for he had nolue dwelled

Of the Saracen Historie. 61

dwelled among them. xrb. yeres) had geuen sufficient testimonie & put them in an assured opiniō of his fidelitie towarde them. Insomuch that renouncing and apostatizing his Chyristianitie and abiuring the holy Religion of the Chyristians, he embraced the horrible doctrine of Mahometicall Religion. And beyng by them appoynted Capitane of a competent Crew of warlike Souldiours was sent against the Chyristians. For he had promysed vnto them, that if they would furnishe him out with some competent power, he woulde undertake to subdue the Romane Emppye into their handes. And least the Chyristians should haue any mistrust & diffidence in him thus working and contriuing the Woyle of their confusion, or peradventure taking him as a straunger & forayner giue no credite to his wordes, he named himself Constantine, the sonne of Irene. Which Constantine in very dede (for his crabbed nature and peruerse maners) his mother lōg before had bereft of both his eyes and of the Empire also, and was then dead.

Some others there be, which do affirme that this Thomas was whilome in the huse of one Bardanius surnamed Turcus, together with Michael and Leo. At what time soiourning at a place called Philomelium, & seeking by all meanes how to make himselfe Emperour, he discovered his counsaile and opened the very bottome of his stomacke to a certaine Wonke skilfull in the prediction of fortunes and thyngs to come, to which deuise and plat he made Leo Armenus priuie. Vnto whome the Wonke tolde, that if he first aspired to the Emppye, he should lose both hys eyes and his wooldly dignitie: but of them, that bzought hym his hoyle, the first and second should enioy the Diademe, and the thirde should bee proclaymed Emperour: but not hable to compasse and thzoughly bzying about, his desired purpose, he should shortly perishe and be bzought to confusion.

§. iij.

The

Thomas a
ranke sedi-
cious trait-
tor, and fil-
thy villain.

The second Booke

The first was Leo, the second Michael, and the third this Thomas whom Leo the Emperour made Colonell over the Band of his Confederates. Which Leo, when Thomas understood to be slaine by Michael, he partly to reuenge the death of him through whose beneuolence & goodwill he had bene promoted to diuerse dignities, and partly to ease his owne stomacke and bzing about the effect of his malicious mynde (for Michael and he could neuer agree but maligne one an other euen from their Adolescence) raysed warre agaynst Michael, and first found the meanes to inueigle and rayle by the Orientall power (among whom he lyued) to take part wth hym. Thus he gathered together an armie not of weaklings and vnerpert Shouldours, of a few in number, but huge, populous and hardie, of Saracenes, Moores, Indians, Medes, Persians, Assyrians, Armenians, Chaldees, Iberians, Zigians, Cabirians and diuerse other Nations. Of whom, some by compulsion accompanied hym in that warre, some for good will, some in hope of spoyle, and some for a rooted malice and hatred agaynst Michael, who for his froward nature and peruerse manners was generally hated of all men. For Thomas although he was lame on one of his feete, and a Barbarian bozne, yet for his gray heares and auncient age he was reputed among them venerable and worthy, in famylier talkie and conference very courteous and affable (whyche are the thinges that most of all wynneth the heartes of Shouldours) and for bodely strength not inferiour to any.

He thus furnished with an armie of Saracenes, to whom he had promysed the Constantinopolitane Emperre, and also with a great power of Christians which ventured life limme and goods with him, violently inuaded and forcibly got the possessiō of the Orient. And bzing ing vnder his obedience the exacters of publique tributes with

Of the Saracen Historie. 62

with great statelynesse of minde, solowed the chase of god fortune now seruing his turne and smyng vppon hym, Within a while, of a low Harkerd became a great ruler and of a weake mungrell became a mighty Potentate, by whom all Asia was with spoiling and pillage miserably afflicted. Some Cities for feare toygned hym with hym, and conformed themselves to his humour. Some because they would not reuolte from the true Liege the Emperour, were spoiled and the inhabitants carped away Captiue. So that there were none in all Asia but only the Opicians and Armenians which continued in their true allegiance. For which gratitie & constant obedience, the Emperour released and frankly remitted vnto the their publique tribute called Fumariū. But Thomas was so puffed vp wth this successe, he presumptuously toke vpon him the name of Emperour: & was crowned with the Diademe at Antioche, by Iob Pastour or Bishop at that time of the Antiochene Congregation: whom he (to requite one good turne for another) adopted for his Sonne, and made as his fellowe and Coadiutor in the administration of the Emperre, and then chaunging his owne name called himselfe Constantine the Sonne of Irene the Emperesse.

The Emperour knowing of this new stirre and commotion made preparation for warre: and sent one of his Lordes with an Army nothing equall (God wot) nor of power to match and encounter with his enemies: which was by Thomas discomfited and cleane ouerthrowen. After this, meeting with the Romane Flote, toke the same, and with lxxx. M. men toke his way to Abydus, which is a Citie of Asia the lesse, standing vpon the Sea syde, spoiling and destroying all where he went, & burning to ashes not only poore vylardish villages, but goodly towne and stronge Cities. And from thence in a very darke nyghte transcreted into Thracia, where many of the Em

The second Booke

Emperours Souldiours renoulted and fled dayly unto hym. He put to flight and dyane downe all the Emperours power sent against hym. Wherof were chief Capitaines Olbian and Cacacella, and (lyke a ragyng Streame, violently runnyng downe from a Hell) pzofigated both by Sea and Land and boze downe befoze him, an other wel apoynted Flaue, manned out lykewise by the Emperour against him. He burst asunder the yron chayne that went ouerthwart the Haven & so layd siege to the citie both by Sea and land. Wnt pzeuaillyng nothing that way, he determined to winne his purpose by long siege, and fortifying his Campe in very good order, sent parte of his army to subdue the Townes lying by the Coast of Euxine. This done, with the rest of his power (which was very great) he on every side beclipped the citie with a mighty oppugnation and gaue thereto a terrible battery. But by the valgaunt courage of the Defendauntes, all his attempts were frustrate. And his Flaue on the Sea by force of tempest was disperfed and disseuered, so that he was fayne to byynge his host back agayne into Asia tyll the wynter were passed.

The Spring folowynge, he agayne returned to the same siege: but Michael being now better furnished and pzovided then hee was befoze both with a Flaue of tall Shippes to scowze the Coastes and keepe the Seas, and also with an army of lusty souldiours by land, first assailed by diuers sights to vndermine Thomas his souldiours & to sollicite them to renounce and forsake their Capitaine but al was in vayne. Wherfoze setting all the Gates of the citie open, he sodenly with all his company issued out and set vpon Thomas suspectyng no such pzetence and matter, and him there discomfited, and his whole Flote on the Sea also.

There was one Gregory, Cosen to Leo late Emperour, who with a crew of good fighting Souldiours ayded Thomas

Of the Saracen Historie. 63

mas, but now seeinge the twoylde thus tourned, separated forthwith his Souldiours aparte from the residue, in hope thereby to wyne the Emperours fauour and set vpon Thomas behinde. Whiche when Thomas espyed, being nothing therewith discouraged, nor yet therfoze remouing his stronglye lodged Campe from the Citie, set vpon Gregorio with parte of his Army and him discomfited, who for his sauegard flying away, he caught in the chase and put to death. Then speeding himselfe into his Camp agayne, he addressed his letters abroad into all quarters, vntuly making report that he had gotten the vpperhand against Michael in battayle: and sent for the Flaue that lay at Berytum, wherein were of Gallayes and Hulkes to the number of CCC. L. Sayle, with all expedition to come vnto him, as though the matter should forthwith be tryed likewise by Sea. Which dyfte and commaundement when the Admyrall and Capitaines of the Romane Flaue vnderstode and knew, they set vpon them at vnwares by night in the roade, when they lay at Anker, and with their sodayne comming, so scarred and affrayed the Pariners that they were at their wittes ende and knewe not how vpon such a sodayne to defend themselves: so that many of them were by the Imperials taken, and many burnt, and very few escaped, which being quicke of sayle gott away and toynded themselves to the other Army that was on the land.

While this terrestriall army lay befoze Constantino-ple, without any notable battayle sauing only many light skirmishes, and small bickeringes, wherein sometimes Fortune smyled and sometime frowned vpon either part, the same and reporte thereof was spread and bzuted throughout the world. In somuche that Mortago King of Bulgarie, (notwithstandinge the Emperoure for greedynesse and miserable sparing of his money as he

¶

was

The second Booke

was by nature most courteous and a néere Prince, than-
kyng hym for his good wyll, had before refused his ayde
offeryng to assist him, saying that he had no néede therof
partly because hee was desirous of Warre and spoyle
of his enemies, and partly to confirme the former three
yeeres League made with Leo Armenus, marched with
an Armye agaynst Thomas, and him in a place called
Cedocto, not farre from Constantinople where the two
armyes met, in Battayle overcame & vanquished, where
in many a man was slayne, and after the ende thereof
retourned home with many Prisoners and rich Booties.

When the Prince that Thomas had left at the Siege
heard of this notable discomfiture and overthrowe, they
all reuoluted from Thomas and submitted themselves to
the Emperour. Thomas gathering together the rem-
nant of his Armye that escaped unkyllled at the last con-
flict with Mortago, conducted them into a playne felde
called Diabasis, distant certayne Furlonges from the
Cittie, a place verie commodious and fit for excursions,
and for plentie of water very profitable. Where hee a-
new encamped. From thence makinge vagaries and
roades, he waiked and despoiled al the Emperours sump-
tuous buyldings and banquetting houses of pleasure stand-
ing in the Suburbes of the Cittie. The Emperours ha-
vinge his Armye every daye more and more encreased,
strake by Alarme and gaue the charge vpon him in thre
seuerall parts, whereby he thoroughly put al Thomas his
Armye to flight. For Thomas before had geuen com-
maundements to his men, that at the firste onlette, they
should retyre and make a shewe as though they fled, and
afterward vpon the sodayne twayne agayne and recharge
vpon their enemies. After this discomfiture many of his
men fledde to the Emperour. Thomas with a fewe of his
adherents came in safetie to Adrianople and his adoptive
sonne Anastasius escaping also by flight, toke for his saue-
garde

Of the Saracen Historie. 64

garde the Castell of Byzia. After whom the Emperour
without delay makinge pursuite, went firste to Adriano-
ple where Thomas was. And least the Scythians dwel-
lyng thereabout, should learne the knowledge of such en-
gins and Artyllerie as serue for Battery and oppugna-
tion of Citties, he determined by famine to bryue them to
surrender and yelde, and so beclipped it rounde aboute
with a strong Siege.

The Cittie was well walled and beside that, surely en-
trenched and fortified with Bulwarkes. But they were
so pinched with Famine, that all their victualles beinge
spent, they secretly had conference with Michael and be-
ing at a poynde and composition with him for pardon of
this their rebellious conspiracie, deliuered Thomas into
his handes. The Emperour now havinge in his possessi-
on his deadly enemye, observinge y^e auncient custome of o-
ther Emperours in lyke cases, first made him to prostrate
himselfe vpon the Pavement and Stones, whiche done,
he set his kete vpon his necke, and trodde vpon hym.
Then he caused his Fete and handes to be cutte of, and
so settinge him vpon an Asse, commaunded him to be caried
about the Campe, for euery man to wonder at. Where-
at the miserable captiue said in howlinge for these woordes:
Haue mercie & compassion vpon me y^e art y^e true King.
And when he was about, vpon y^e Emperours interroga-
tores & motions to haue belaided & accused certen of his
famyliers, as pryue and of counsell with him in this rus-
sing rebellion, the Emperour beinge aduised by Exam-
bulius one of his Nobles, that no credite ought in such ca-
ses to be geuen to a professed enemye, accusing the appo-
ued frendes of his Spallie, would not heare him. And
so geuinge order for his execution, caused him, (longe lan-
guishing in terrible torments) to be put to death.

They that fled to Byzia, folowinge the example of the
Adrianopolitanes, toke Anastasius and deliuered hym

¶ ii

bound

Ende of
Craytours

The second Booke

bounde to the Emperour, who also was put to execution. This end had Thomas, whose histoꝛie (although he were no Saracen) we thought good not here to omit, because he chiefly atchieued and perpetrated the same by the aide and power of the Saracens, insomuch that he might right well seeme to haue bene the Emperour and Kingleader of the Saracens.

While these things were in doing in the Orient, the Saracens in Spaine, most arrogantly by their Ambassadors demanded of Ramire King of Asturias (who succeeded Alphonsus Castus) a Tribute which king Mauregat was wont to pay. Vnto whom Ramire by the aduise of his priuie Counsell answered, that he had leiser dye a hundred deathes then to doe. And forthwith leuying an armie marched against them wasting and destroying their Territoꝛies and Countreyes, as farre as Nagera. Betwene whom and the Saracens was fought at Aluelda a foze battayle, and fozer had bene if the night had not made an ende of the same for that daye, wherein soasmuch as the Saracenes were lyker to haue the victoꝛie: Ramire by night with his companie retyzed vnto a certaine hill nere Clauigium: and there greatly fearing the dome of Fortune the next day, and what woulde befall on him and his, after so vnluckie a beginning, sought his onely refuge at Gods handes, beseeching (both he and all his retinue) the whole night almost in watching and prayer to Almighty God for his assistance in that they greuous extremitie. When and there (as some do saye) Saint James the Apostle seemed personally to appeare vnto him, promysing him his helpe and furthersaunce, whereupon Ramire the next day comming into the field in good aray of battaile, against his enemies, with an assured confidence of Diuine helpe and assistance, the sayde holy Apostle Saint James was sene in the battayle, sitting vpon a white horse and bearing in his hande a redde

Crosse

Of the Saracen Historie. 65

Crosse, and that in the same Battaille were slayne of Saracenes. lxx. thousand. Then were Albaida, Clauigium, Calagurra, and many other townes thereabout regained by the Christians: In token and remembrance of which victoꝛie by the Diuine assistance of Celestiall presence atchieued, the Noble order of the Knights of Saincte James was by the King instituted.

The Saracenes inhabiting the West parte of Spayne where Valencia standeth, pestered with multitude of people, and considering that a Countrey which was vnto the for their habitation allotted, was neither fruitfull nor wealthie, desired their highe Prince of Marrocco in Mauritania Tingitania whose name was Amerumen, to permit and lycense them to seke some other place of dwelling, where they might moze commodiously rouse: and whither they might cary they people, and familie and plant themselves moze to their contentations. Whose requestes their Prince, as one desirous of new alterations and chaunges of the world graunted: and furnishing them out of hande with a Paue of Bizandines and Gallayes, partlye because he woulde staunch their greedie appetites with other mennes goods, and partlye because he woulde by this meanes trie and seke out whether there were any fruitfull Soyle and fertile Island, whereinto he might conveniently deriue a Colonie of his owne people, sent them to the Isles of the Orient. They landed first in Corlica, but thence they were repulled and dyuen awaye by Abdemar, whom Pipine the Sonne of Charles the Great King of Italic, had sent with the Genaway flete agaynst them. In which conflicte, Abdemar most valiantly and manfully fighting was slayne. From thence sayling to the Isles of Grecia (whych were spoyled and disurnished of the Paue appoynted to keepe them, through the meanes of the Garrison that tooke parte

With.

By whom & wherbyon the Knights of the order of S. James were first instituted.

The second Booke

with Thomas) they sacked and robbed almost euery one of them vniuersally. Among all the rest, lyking Creta best, both for fertilitie of the Countrey, and holmesnes of Ayre, they laded theyr Shippes with pillage and retourned for that yere home againe, and in the Springe folowing, with xl. tall Shippes well manned and appoynted for the warres, they hauing a prosperous gale of wynde came straight agayne to Creta. And setting theyr men on lande at a Promontorie called euer after Carax, set theyr Shippes on fire, and there pitching their Tentes, strongly entrenched them selues, calling the place by the name of Caudax. Against whom, the Emperour with all expedition sent a power vnder the conduct of Photinus Lieutenant of the Orient, and one Damianus who in a certaine skirmish against them, was slaine, whose death so much, as stommed and discouraged the residue, that they trusted to their legges and ranne awaye. Then there came vnto them a certaine Monk out of the mountaines of that Island, who tolde them that the place whiche they had chosen to builde a Citie vpon, was nothing fit for such a purpose: and withall, shewed vnto them a place, named Candaces, in all pointes farre moze commodious. Where they builded a Citie, which should be as the Castle and forte of the whole Isle, and called it Candie. Out of which they made Roades and inuasions into the whole Isle, insomuch that within a shorte space they brought the same wholly into theyr subiection, dispossessioning the inhabitants and carrying the Citizens away into Captiuitie. At which time, Cyrillus Bishop of Gortyne, suffered martyrdom for the profession and testimony of Iesus Christ, our only Saviour. An other nante of the about the same time, attempted once againe the winning of Sardinia & Corfica: the which was encountered and vanquished about Sardinia by the power of Charles, the

brother

Of the Saracen Historie. 66

brother of Pipine, being vnder the conduct of the Countie Bucharede, & v. of the saracens slaine, & all the rest of them afterwarde by him cleane driuen out of Corfica.

Pipine hauing warres with the Venetians, the Saracens in Spaine, taking occasion by the discorde and dissensions of the Christians to bring their own matters to desired effect, sodainly inuaded Sardinia, from whence not long afore, they had bene repulst with a notable slaughter & losse of their people. But staying not long there, they sodainly departed thence: cutting their course directly to Corfica. And lacking the Citie Aleria, beside the Bishop and a few other old men, all the other multitude & common sort they carried thence away with them. The Emperour Michael, sent out another manie wherof was Captain Craterus the Lieutenant of Cyberetes, against the Saracens which roused & nestled in Creta. Who with lxx. Saylor of his owne and an infinite number of Gallies of other Isles, well manned & appointed, courageously landed in Creta: where he found the Saracens neuer a whit abashed of his apparall, neither refusing by dent of sword and stroke of battaile to barraigne their quarell. Wherevpon, they mette together in a place meete for such a purpose: where betwene them was fought a sharpe and cruell Battaille, lasting from the dawning of the day till some, in such doubtfull fortune that hard it was to iudge, whether part in the end would carry away the victory. But at length toward evening the Saracens were overcome and fled: wherof many were slain in the fildes but moe, throwing away their weapons were taken: insomuch that 5 dayes theyr Citie was lyke to haue bene taken and warne, if it had not bene so nere night. Which night and victorie was the destruction and overthrow of the Greeces as afterwarde shall appere. For being now in their politie and payde, hoping the next day folowing to small labour, as none at all, to bring those fewe of theyr enemies yet

The second Booke

yet left a liue into their power) gaue themselves to bibe, ynge, ryot and bellychere as though they had not bene in their enemies psecinde and daunger but at home in their owne houses, taking no regard to set their watch kept, or any other expedient order obserued: Insomuch that minding no other thing but sleepe, ease and slouth (the better ouerthrowers of al goodnes) they were set vpon in the dead tyme of the night, moztynge with their dzenken noyles, by the Saracenes (who espyed the aduantage and oportunitie) and were slayne every others sonne, not somuch as a Messenger left a liue to carry home newes of their ill spede. Onely Craterus the Capitaine, imbarkeinge himselfe in a Marchauntes Craet, sought to saue his life. But when the Chieftayne of the Saracenicall Armye after longe seekinge and tumblinge among the dead Carcasses and Prisoners could not finde him, knowing him then to be escaped and fled, sent in all post hast to pursue and hunt him out. Who being taken and apprehended in the Ile of Coo, was hanged vpon a Gibbet.

The Emperour Michael hearing these newes commanded Orypha a wiseman and verie skillfull in Particall affaires to gather together the Prætorian Legion (which because every souldiour of that Legion had for his wages xl. Crownes was then called Quadragenaria) and with them he speede himselfe against the saracenes, whome he greatly chidamaged, sometimes killinge them as they raunged licentious and excursiuely abroade into other Ilandes for spoyle, partly breaking out vpon them out of Stales and Ambushes, layd for the nonce to intrap them; and partly by open conflicts & pitched battailes. He also cooled the courage and abated the pride, & immoderate audacitie of them that vsurped the Countrey of Crece.

At this tyme, there was one Euphemius, Capitaine of a certayne Band of Souldiours in Sicilie who not being able to master the lasciuious passions of inordinate loue,

Of the Saracen Historie. 67

perforce toke a virgin out of the Cloyster wher she was professed Nun, and had bowed chastitie from her tender age, and her by the example of his Lorde and Maister the emperour (who also had sometime perpetrated y^e lyke enormity) rauished and carnally knew against her consent and will. For whiche imppious acte, her Mothers made complaynt to the Emperour with humble request y^t this detestable example might not escape y^e penalty & punishment due for such a villanye. Whereupon the Emperour sent Commandement to the Regent of Sicilie, that if this were true he should listie and cut off Euphemius his nose. Euphemius vnderstanding what sentence and iudgment the emperour had geue against him, entred into a conspiracye with his olde Souldiours and other Capitaynes besides, and they altogether fled to Ambulak Bishop of the Saracenes in Mauritania. Prompyng vnto him that if he might by his help and meanes be proclaymed Emperour of Romanes, he would deliuer and bring all Syccile in subiection vnder him, and woulde moreover paye vnto hym a great Tribute. Whiche offer and condition Ambulak not refusing, inuested hym with the tytle of Romane Emperour, and furnished him with a great Armye, by meanes whereof he won the possession of Sicilie: but Euphemius making his progresse and walkes about Sicilie in the habit and statelie gesture of Emperour, was at the Citie of Syracuse slaine.

Then began the Saracens to set foote into Calabria and diuers other partes of Italye, making therein great haueock and spoyle: of whom, one Paup perished and was cast away about the Coastes of Sardinia, the other (for there were two sent out) in fleeing wyse retourned home. Whiche caused Ambulak to conclude a peace with the french kinge.

But within a while after, Bernard the Sonne of Pipine

Inferiours
take exam-
ple of their
Superiours

Dzenkenes
the cause of
a generall
mishap and
slaughter.

The second Booke

Pipine reigning in Italy, the Saracens despising and rejecting the peace that Ambulak had made, invaded Corsica: who in their returne homwarde beinge laden and full fraught with booties and great store of Pyllage, were in the mayne Sea encountred by one Ermengarius, a man of great power in the greater of the Baleare Islands, who by whose offe king of Italy maintained a garison ther, by whome the Saracenes at the first onset were cleane discomfited and put to flight, and diuers of their shippes intercepted and taken, beside 500. Christian prisoners in them, which were rescued and saued. Notwithstandinge all this misfortune and discomfiture, the Saracens would rest, but coasting about Italic with their Fleet sodaynely landed and surprised a towne, in the Coast of Hetruria, named Centumcel, which nowe is called the olde Citie. Which beinge so taken, they sacked and with sword and fire defaced most rudely. From thence holding on their voyage toward Narbon they destroyed, harped and spoiled the Country al about, and that done invaded Sardinia where they practised all kinde of wast and robbery. But as they fetched their vagaries and licencious roades, Ermengarius agayne with the power of the Ile by hym assembled, vpon a sodayne gaue the charge vpon them, put them to flight, and with great slaughter on their side, drave them to the Sea, where for hast as they thicke and threefolde strided, who might first get a boorde they were killed downe right at the pleasure and full desire of their Enemies. Beinge thus grievously afflicted and hauynge lost a great part of their paye, they waighed by their Ankers and sayled into Africa. And they which were in Syccile, hearinge that the Venetians (to gratyfie the Constantinopolitan Emperoure) vnto whom that Ile was subiect) purposed to send a paye against them, filled their Bagges and stuffed their powches with such spoyle and pray as they lyked and went their way.

After

Of the Saracen Historie. 68

After this, Haido whom Lewes Kinge of Fraunce and the Emperour had made Ruler of Aquitanie by treacherye and guylefull dealinge surprysed and ruffled the Citie Ausonia, and because he was not of power hymselfe to keepe the same, he procured ayde from the Spanish Saracens, by whose helpe he spoiled farre and nere both Aquitanie and the hither part of Spayne. Whose purpose and pretence, Lewes within short space repressed. And Alphonis surnamed Magnus, Kinge of Asturia and Lyon, nere to the riuer Duero vanquished two Armies of the Saracenical King of Toledo, which were thither sent to besiege and oppugne the Citie of Lyon. Whereouer hee rayled the Siege that the Saracenes had bent agaynst Coimbra, and set the same free from their dreadfull oppugnation.

And when hee was in buyldinge the Citie of Zamorra, the same Saracenes vnder the conducte and leadinge of a Prophet of theirs, named Alchama, came agaynst hym, whom he vanquished, and of them slew a great number, and among the rest their Capitayne Alchama: and toke Abboaline prisoner, a Capitayne of great fame and estimation among them, who raunomed himselfe for two C. M. Ducates and so was deliuered. With which money the Kinge newe buylded the famous Temple of S. James in Ouiedo of Parble, which was before but of Bricke.

But in Italic the Saracens had taken Palermo the most famous and noble Citie in all Sicile, neyther was there any man that woulde take vpon him to resiste their furious attemptes or once goe about to preuent or repress their malycious deuoyces, sauyng onely Boniface Counte of Corsica, who accompanied with his Brother Beatrius and a fewe other of the Barons and Lords of Hetruria sayled into Africke and landynge betwene Vtica and Carthage slewe so manye of his Enemies

A Church
buyld with
the money
of a Saracen
payde for
his raun-
some.

At

in

The second Booke

in foure cruell Battayles, that like as the Carthaginians whilome were enforced to call home Anniball out of Italic, so the Saracenes were faine to call home their people that were then in Sicile: and so Sicile was deliuered from the pestiferous oppression and extreme daunger of Saracenicall Hostilitie. After which victories gloriouly by Boniface atchieued, he with great foylon and plenty of pray and riche booties retourned home with his victorious Flaue out of Africa. But the Saracens could not in any sance abyde to be long quiet, but within a while, to a greater power and puyssaunce then at any time befoze, they invaded Italic, and againe toke the Citie Centum-cell. From thence in post hast with a running Campe they spedde them toward Rome, and with little labour got the possession of Vaticanum, and after they had spoiled the goodly Church of S. Peter (which standeth in that place) and take away the Dozes of Syluer which it had, of price and valew inestimable, they prophaned it with fire and swoorde most sacrilegiouly. And taryng there certayne dayes they were fully bent to haue layd siege to the Citie, but hearing that an armie was leuyed and in comming against them out of Lombardie they departed and ruthfully wasted al the Suburbes and villages nere the Citie that laye betwene the two wayes Appia and Latina. They spoiled and robbed the Cathedra Church of S. Paule in the way called Via Ostiensis, and consumed the most part of it with fire: from thence turning in to Latina Via, they spoylingly rushed into the pzeincle and Chace of Calsinum, and robbed the Temple of Calsinum of all the holy Ornamentes, Vestures, Reliques, and Gytes whereof it had marueilous great store, and utterly ruynated a great part therof. Then keeping their way by the right side of the riuer Leire, they spedde them apace toward the Sea, in such populous Blumpes, that they were like vnto a violent swift strome or terrible

Rome spoiled by the Saracens.

Of the Saracen Historie. 69

whirlewinde: and fraughting their Shippes with their spogles and booties, which lay there ready, they boyed by theyr Sailes and launched into the maine Sea.

And in Hispaine, Abduramen King of Corduba entering into the bozders of Biskaye, fought most valiantly and fiercely the space of a whole day with the Armies and power of Ordonius King of Lyon and Gartias & Ignigenius of Biskaye: and fortune seeming for that daye to dispose and encline the victorie to neither party, departed the Battaille. Ordonius meaning to requite & pay home Abduramen, entred into his Countrey, and subuerted the Towne of Cincilia, which is now called Sanciliana. But in Asia, Imrael & Caliph of Syria, succeding Muamar, with a huge power brake into the confines and limittes of the Romane Emperre. Against whom, the Emperour Theophilus marched with his royall Army, and hauing in his company two most valiaunt Capitaynes Theophobus and Manuel, in whose pzoesse and vertue in armes he reposed his whole trust and confidence, was fully resolved and determined to giue vnto him battayle: of whose appzoche and comming, Imrael hearyng certessed whether he did it vpon an arrogance & disdain, or that he feared the euent and fortune of Battayle, leauing behinde him one Abuzachar with lxxx. thousande good fighting and well appointed men to try the quarell by stroke of mortall confidite, departed and went by way with part of his Armye. The battayle bearyng toynded and clasped together, and the Saracenes getting the upperhande, Theophilus wyth his Pratorian bande and two. m. Persians and Theophobus, escaped and attayned into the toppe of a little Hill, which being fiercely assailed and beset wyth Saracenes, whose onely desire was to take the Romane Emperour prisoner, the Romane souldiours most valiantly fighting for the safegarde and incolumitie of theyr Lozde

W.iii.

and

The second Booke

and past the Emperours sacred Palace, defended. The conflict continued, sharply and desperately fought on both sides till the Evening. But as soone as night was come, Theophobus by a pretie sleight and Stratageme deluded the Saracenes and brought themselves out of that present danger and extremitie. For he commanded his Souldiours, as loud as they coude to shoute and make a noyse, and to sounde theyr Trumpettes and play vpon their Harpes and muscical Instruments, as though there had come some freshe ayde and succour to releue and rescue them at that present pynche of distresse. Which deuise fell out accoꝝdyng to his first imaginacion. For the Saracenes surely thinking that moze ayde was come, and fearing leasse they should be entrapped and on euery syde enclosed by their enemyes, discamped and remoued ffr. Hyles further of, and so the Emperour with all his retinewe and Host being deliuered out of danger, came safe to the residue of his Armye, whiche saued themselves by flight at the last conflict. For which politique Stratageme and wyse shifte, the Emperour made Theophobus chiefe Generall and Lieutenaut of the whole Armie. And the yere folowynge, making another voyage and expedition against the Saracenes, vanquished them in a notable Battayle at Charianum, and so with twentie and ffr. thousande Prisoners he returned home.

Agayne, the thyrde yere he leuyed his power and marched against them and ioynynge Battayle with them was so circumvented and beset with his enemyes that he had almost fallen into theyr handes. Which danger of the Emperour, Manuel chiefe Capitaine of the Armye vnder him perceyving, encouraged and incensed the mindes of his Souldiours with a vehement exhortation and

Of the Saracen Historie. 70

and made a way perforce to the place where the Emperour was distressed, and hym (beyng nowe wearied and bitterly dyspayning of any escape or remedie, yet myndynge to abyde the vttermost hazarde, rather then he woulde dismaye and leaue his Souldiours comfortlesse through his departure, saying that he woulde not by flight betray the lyues of his pooze vassalles into the mercylesse salantes of that wicked generation) deliuered and brought out of that danger, not without, threates and menaces that he woulde kill him. Whylle he woulde consent to folow him openynge the way and passage for him to escape. And the fourth yere, both the Armyes with all theyr powers commynge into the fielde without any notable thing done worthy of remembrance, returned home. The ffr. yere, Theophilus leuyng his Armye farre within Syria, wastynge and spoylynge all the Countrey in his waie, wanne and Conquered Zozopetra the Countrey and Seate of Impraell, which so nettled and chaufed Impraell, that he assembled all the power hee was hable to make with intent to invade Amorium the Countrey of Theophilus. His Armye mette all together at Tharsus: whither when Impraell himselfe was come, he sent his Sonne with parte of his Armye before, to skirmishe and dallie (as it were in the waye of an assaye) with the Romane Hoste, whiche was lodged and encamped at Dorylaum thre dayes journey from Amorium. And vnto hym he appoynted tenne thousande Turkes and all the power of Armenia. Who beyng thus furnished and appoynted with men and armour and encamped at Drazymenum, Theophilus went against him and lodged his Hoste in a place called Auzin, purposing before he woulde ioyne any Battayle to espye and discover the multitude and number of his enemyes.

Being

The second Booke

Armye (soz that the Saracenes as though they had bene a frayde, kept their heabes within the walles of their citie) was lulled in securitie, geuyng no regarde to orderly behauour, noz to the good keeping of their watch, the Saracenes all in armure bypon the thirde day after the Siege was planted, whē al y Romane Souldiours were assembled & congregated together to here diuine service (soz it was bypon a Sundaye) setting open their Gates and issuing out todaynlye, kylled and manquelled the Romans on euery side: insomuch that the Emperoure himselfe had much a doo to escape, losing and leauyng behinde him all his carriage and prouision. And agayne within two yeres next after, the Saracenes entred within the dition and lymites of the Romane Empire with xxx. M. men, wherfore Michael meaning to wyne his Spurres againe & to be even wth the saracens soz y foyle lately taken at their handes, leuied an Armye of xl. M. Thracians and Macedonians, and marchod against them. Which when they knew, by dangerous iourneyes and compendious pathes they p^{re}uented his purpose, settinge bypon him todaynly and at vnawares being in his iournay and out of order. Wherby he was discomfited and compelled to fle. And at that time, they saye that Michael had fallen into the handes of his Enemies, if Manuel had not venturously entred and violentlye broken into the b^{re}ast of the Enemies Armye and disturbinge their arae deliuered him from daunger.

Two yeres after this, Mamume the Son of Impraet beinge Caliph of Syria, the Saracenes with an Armye of xl. thousand men spoiled and ouerrunne Armenia and all the Sea coastes cruelly. At whiche time, the Caliph is repo^{rt}ed to haue done as xerxes longe afoze d^{id}, commaunding the Sea to be whipped and beaten with scourges, because it stopped his intent, that he could not haue

Of the Saracen Historie. 72

haue his will to go any further. Michael who could not with pacient minde b^{re}ake and digest these iniuries, sent his Uncle Petrona (Lieutenaunt of Thracia) with a great power against Mamume. Who encamped hymselfe in a certayne place called Lalacxon, and settinge Stales and Ambushes on euery side to surp^{ri}se and entrappe his foes when aduantage should be offered, prouoked Mamume to the encountrie and battayle. Mamume being thus beset, and on euery side circumvented by his Enemies, lyke vnto a Byrd in a Cage, oz a D^{ee}re in a Buckstall, was at his wittes ende, not knowyng how to escape oz shift hymselfe out of that imminent perill. And demanding of one of the Romane captiues (whom he had taken Prisoner) the name of that Countrey and place wherein he had pight his Danilyons and Campe, and by what name the riuer there harde by, was called, answere was made by the Prisoner, that the Countrey was called Lalacxon, the place Procon, and the riuer Gyris.

Wherby he p^{re}saged and by the appellacions of the same places (soz hee was a man well sene in the Greeke and Laryne Tongues, and earnestlye geuen to y study of Philosophy) immediatly contempered y those names portended his confusion and some notable overthrow of his people, and signified that hee and his retynne should be on euery side beset and caught lyke Fishes in a Net by the Romanes. Notwithstandinge, he encouraged his men not to quayle and despayre, but to stande lustelie to their tackelynge and to determyne with themselves to withstand their Enemies. Wherfore the next morning, as soon as the day appeared, well perceiuing himselfe to be hemmed in on euery side, he determined to seke a way and egress by that part and place which Petrona guarded, and thereupon geuyng vⁿ

to

The second Booke

*A Saracen
Prince and
all his host
slayne.*

to his men a watchword and token to gene aloude thout
all at once, there set vpon his enemies. But seeing his at-
tempt and purpose to be all in vayne, he a little retyred,
after a small bzeathing, gaue a sharpe and freshe onset a-
gayne, and vsing this order sundry tymes by startes ge-
uyng a blow and away agayne, at length desperatly with
a behebement violence and force rushed into the middes of
his enemyes, and was there slayne, both he and all his
Host utterly.

This Honne whom he had sent on roning and spoyling
with parte of his Armye, hearinge of his Fathers death
and confusion, retyred in hast to Melitena. But he was
pursued and taken by y Capitaine of y Charisian streits,
and presented to Petrona. This Mamume was surerly
a man garnished and endued with many excellent quali-
ties and notable vertues. For beyng himselfe singuler-
ly well learned, he cherished and entyerlye loued all them
that were learned, esteemyng and entertayning them ve-
ry honorable, as by that example followinge shal appeare,
which for the woorthynesse and commendacion thereof, I
haue thought good here to disciphere.

There was in Constantinople (somtime called By-
zance) a certayne Philosopher named Leo, somtime by-
shoppe of Thesalonica, and now depriued from the By-
lacie and Bysshoppeiche therof by reason of a deuision and
controuersee touching the hauyng and woorthipping of I-
mages, which at that time meruellouslye frusched and dis-
turbed the Latine and the Greeke Church. Weinge for
this cause thence exiled, hee came to Constantinople,
where he byered a poore Cotage, and set vp a Schole, pro-
fessing to traîne and instructe such Scholers as resorted
to him, in what Arte soeuer euery one was best disposed
to learne. Insemuch that out of his pryuate Schoole ther-
came many notable Clarkes, very skilfull in the Studie
of Artes and Philosophy, and among the rest, it so chaun-
ced

Of the Saracen Historie. 73

red about this time that a certayne young man one of his
Scholers, hauinge by his Maisters industrious labour
and diligence attayned to an exact knowledge and skyll of
Geometrie, was taken Prisoner in the warres by the
Saracens, & chaunced into y seruice or rather seruitude of a
noble man of great estimation and name amonge them.
Whom Mamume by report and common bzuile hearing
to be well sene in the Mathematicall Disciplines com-
maunded to be brought befoze him. And causinge hym
in a disputation to be thoroughly apposed, found, that he so
farre passed & surmounted the Arabian Geometricians,
that of those thinges whereof they alone thought them-
selues to haue the vse and experiance, he was well hable
to alledge and byinge the proper reasons and causes.
Mamume greatly wondzing at his pzeise and profound
knowledge (for he had thought that no nacion had had the
skill of that Arte but the Arabians onely) asked him of
whom he had learned his Arte, and whether his maister
were yet liuing. The younge man answered, that his
Maisters name was Leo, a poore man, and as yet vn-
luckie to the woorthly goddes of Fortunes giftes and dis-
posicion, but genen altogether to his Booke and Studie.
Whereupon Mamume straightwaies addressed his Let-
ters to Leo in effect as foloweth.

¶ Euen as the Tree is knowne by his fruit, so we by
the Scholer do well knowe the excellencie of the Maister.
Those therefore shalbe to requeste thee, that (sozasmuche
as God hath blessed thee with a gyft so incomperable, and
stithence thou lyvest there in poore estate, unknowne
or at least vnraged of thy Citizens and Countrey
men, reappng no fruite of thy rare wisdom and super-
naturall speculation) thou wouldest daigne to come vnto
vs, and make vs partakers of thy admirable learninge.
This doing, make thy sure account, that all the Sara-
cenicall nacion shall submit themselves vnto thee and be

ready,

The second Booke

readie at thy best and commaundement, and thou shalt be enriched with such rewardes, riches and riches, as neuer yet any man hath bene. These letters he deliuered vnto the young man to carie to Constantinople, setting him free at libertie and rewarding him most honozably.

When Leo had receiued these letters, he opened and tolde the whole matter to certayne of the Emperours familiars. And by this meanes hee became knowen to the Emperour, who appointing vnto him a competent stipend and pencion commaunded him to teache publikly. Mamume despairing of Leo his coming, sent vnto him certayne Geometrical and Astronomical questions and some of the other Sciences, desiring him therein to haue his resolution. The which being cunningly by Leo assayed he sent backe againe to Mamume, wherevnto he had also annexed certaine tokens and signes touching the prediction of future thinges. Which Letters when Mamume had read, it is sayde, that he was rauished with such an ardent desire and zeale toward Leo, that he exclaymed in thys sort: O happy and thyse happy are they I saye, (O Diuine Leo) which haue the compaignie and fruition of thy presence. Then forthwith he sent a solemne Ambassade with great rewardes and ryche presentes vnto the Emperour, and wrote by Letters also vnto him as foloweth: I was fully determined (as it becommeth an vnfeigned friende) to haue come my selfe vnto thee: but sithens the waightie affaires of our Emperour and the gouernance of a most fierce and wyld people, by God committed vnto my charge, (from whom all power and superiouritie floweth) wil not so permitte: I am faine in my steede to sende vnto thee, my Ambassadors with request, that it may please thee, to sende vnto mee Leo, a man endued with great singularitie in the knowledge of Philosophie and other Sciences

Of the Saracen Historie. 74

Sciences, sojourning and making his abode within the Citie of Constantinople. That he dwelling a while with mee, may geue me instructions and make me partaker of his doctrine, whereby I may more earnestly enuoured and as it were instructed. Doe not (I pray thee) deferre the same, but do this my request because of any diuersitie that may be betwixt us for any kinde dealings betwixt our persons, but deale with me herein like a friende. For which tokens and curtessie we will giue vnto thee a .xx. M. Gold and wilt enter into an infrangible league and perpetuall amitie with thee and all thy Dominions.

Which request the Emperour would not graunt, least the Sciences (for which the Romanes were renowned and had in admiration among all Nations) should be communicated & discovered to the Barbarous people. Wherein he being a Greeke and a Christian, might full well haue learned at the hands of a barbarous person and Idolatrous Infidel to reuerence and condisignely esteeme verue: which thing would God, Princes and noble men in this age, admonished by this goodly example would doe. For euer afterward, he had Leo in great honour, and promoted him to great wealth and dignitie, and restored him againe to his See and Bishopprike of Thessalonica, where he was highly honoured and of all men reuerenced for that through his forecasting witt & surpassing knowledge he conuerted and brought the land and groundes of Thessalonica from barrennesse & sterilitie, to fruitfulness and fertilitie. But now it is time for vs to retourne to discourse of Occidentall matters.

The Saracenes of Mauritania, transfretting out of Sicile (wherein they had taken and of longe tyme usurped many Colonies) into Italic, vnder the guiding and conduct of Saba, besieged Tarento. The Greeke and Venetian shippes loyning in one, arrived

The second Booke

ued in Calabria, to raise the Siege and to rescue the Citie. Wherefore hearing Saba, feyning as though he had benee afraide, to th'intent he might the rather allure and prouoke the enemye to coape with him, repesd his Siege and discaimpe, and like as though he had bene loath to meddle, retyped into the region of Crotona: where being afterwarde assailed and set vpon, at the first bzunt he discomfited and put to flight the Greekes, and the whole pynsaunce of the Saracens was all bent & turned against the Venetians fighting and defending themselves manfully: and a few of them in number being by a spawie so strong and mightie circumuised, were partly slain, partly dyotoned, but the Venetians in that conflict perished and were bzought to confusion euerichone, which victorie set Saba so a fote & ingenerated in him such haughtinesse and pride, that speedely coasting ouer the Ionian Sea, he arrived in the coast of Illyria, practising therein along the pzoouinciall bozders great pillage and robberte, and hearing that the Venetian flete was retourning homeward, laden with wares out of Syria, he bzought about his spawie with all expedition into the Bay of Trieste, and from thence insidiously and sodainly setting vpon them, spoiled and killed the Marchauntes and Marchiners, and all the Rowers, their rooted hatred and spightfull rancour toward y Venetia name was so vnappeaseable. Leising thence, he cut his course toward Aucon a noble Citie of Picene, where there is a goodly haue, and if forcibly toke and being taken, sacked and last of all consumed it wyth fire, and a few of the Oppidanen or Towneshmen which taried still, were taken. For the rest being bzought into sodaine feare and amazednes through this violent irruption were fledde almost all into the mayne land and mediterranean region.

Within a litle while after, an other spawie of Saracens landed in the coast of Hetruria, with purpose and full intent

Victorie of
Saracens, ouer the
Greekes and
Venetians.

Of the Saracen Historie. 75

tent to bessege and take the Citie of Rome. Whose sodayne arrivall and terrible appoche filled all the Citie with terror and dread. Wherefore Pope Leo the fourth of that name assembled the people together, and vnto the made this oration folowing.

What is the matter my Childzen whereof you are somuch affraide? or why are your mindes thus troubled and appalled? Certes there happeneth nothing vnto vs without the pzouidence and wyll of the almighty God, neither is it sent vnto vs undesernably on our partes. When ought we to feare & dread their tyzannie, whē we fall at ciuill strife and goe together by the eares amonge our selues, when one Brother conspireth his Brothers death and destruction. For all they whiche do helene and confesse Chziste to be their Sauour and Redemer, are Brothers. When I say when the Wzands of these mischieues are kindled amonge vs, we ought to feare, leasse God being highly displeased with vs therfore, should send these or rather worse plagues vppon vs. For if you think that these impious and barbarous people are sent vnto vs without the will and pleasure of almighty God, you are far deceiued. For holy Scriptures do in many places testifie & dayly examles euery where teache & confirme the same. God saying by his owne mouth, that he wyll vse the wicked blasphemers and the enemies of his sacred name as whippes to scourge, and meanes to pursue bys vnfaithfull, wyllfull and disobedient Childzen. And we do know, that the ciuile discord and flagitious dissolutenes of the Greekes gaue first occasion to this pestiferous and diabollicall nation, to extend their rage and practise their first cruell inuasion vpon the Chzistians. Did not the lewde lyeing of the Gothes and Kinge Rodrick, allure them to set fote into Hispaine. Whome although these bellish Jmpes discomfited and condinglye punished, yet when they once conuerted their force and moued warre

Oration of
Pope Leo
the fourth,
to encourage
his Romans
against the
Saracens.

The second Booke

against god and godly men, they were repulſed, put to flight and ſlaigne even of a few. What do we feare this moſt baſtardy rable and lowly nation moze then we do Almighty God : for we doubt not alwhit, every howze and euery mynute of an howze to offend his Diuine Maieſtie, to prouoke his wrath and anger againſte vs, to reuile and blaſpheme his holy name : to ſetwe our ſelues wiſſall, diſobedient and ſtubboorne to the loze of his ſweet word and commaundment and by our otone phantaſtical deuices to heape vnto ouer ſelues the grieuous ſentence of his heauy diſpleaſure : but at the onely hearinge of this reprobate generation, wee tremble and quake for feare, as though humane force and moztall Armes were moze to be feared, then euerlaſting paynes and eternal damnation. What is the auncient purſaunce and knightly prowes that was wont to be in the vnbaued Romanes : What is become of their valiauntnes, paynfulneſſe, trauaile and courage that in all extremitye and aduerſitie was euer inuincible : Our Anceſſors and forefathers, beſoze Chriſtianitie was embraced, oz Chriſt to the world notified and beleueed on, being yet blinded and noſeled in Idolatrye and ſuperſtitious Religion, feared no force, no violence, no multitude of Enemies, but oftentimes with a ſmall handfull and power, banquiſhed the mightie & populous armies of their Enemies : The Gauls & French, being a people and nation mozt ſierce and at that time by reaſon of the buygenes of their bodies ſo formidable and dreadfull (the limytes of the Romane Empire being yet but ſtreit and narrow, & the Citie nothing ſo great as now it is, mens courages alſo though the ſodayne irruption and coming of ſucha ſire and big nation maruellouſlye abbaſhed) toke in daede (I cannot deny) this Citie, hauing in it at that tyme no force of defence noz comodius place made by art for reſſtance : but yet the Capitoll, they were neuer hable to take. And not

Of the Saracen Historie. 76

not ſuffered long there to rouſe, were by the valiaunce of one baniſhed Romane thence repulſed and driuen alway with notable ſlaughter of a great maigny of their people. And behold, the Romane empire was not of ſuch power and ſtrength at that time as it is now. For the limytes of the myppe extended no further but to the Romane Territory. Now whereas the greateſt part of Italy is ſubiect to the Romane State, and the Citie with people well replenished, hauing now not the Capitoll onely for your ſortreſſe, but a whole Towne alſo by our induſtrie and procurement annexed and vnted to your Citie, ſortified and ſtrengthened with all maner of Artificiall deuſe and pollicie, hauing (I ſay) ſo many noble Perſonages and approued Capitaines both for ſkill & courage renowned, and the Sea of the mozt Catholique Religion here reſt, aint, you now ſtand in dread and feare not of the Gauls, which be a woztthy and noble nation not of the buyge and populous armies of the Gothes, noz yet of the Hunnes, the ſubuerſers and deſtroyers of many mozte flouriſhing and noble cities : but of the mozt cowardly and rogiſh nation of all Asia, a pilſtring rable of Mauritanian, thienus and Agarantes. The Hannes head that was ſounde in the ground where the Capitoll ſtandeth, gaue ſuch a beſtirme and fate therunto, that no nation ſhoulde be hable by conqueſt and force to take it. Do you think that the Capitoll was earlt moze ſafe and holie, beinge the ſeate of Saturn, then it is now, being employed to a Caſtle of ſincere and true religion : Belaeue me, belaeue mee, nexther the Saracenes noz anye other wicked Nation whiche are the profeſſed Enemies of Chriſtes name and Religion ſhall euer buylde their Towze & plant themſelues in this Citie. Rome was buylde under ſuch a lucky Conſtellation, that the Emppze thereof ſhall neuer quaggle but continue perpetuallie : and under this ſame deſcenſe is this Towne therunto annexed and adioyned that it ſhoulde

The second Booke

should be the See of Religion, which thing the most em-
 periall and Cathedrall Church of him that is chiefe of the
 Apostles assuredly promisseth. But peradventure you
 thinke, that God being prouoked and moued to wrath
 by reason of our manyfold sinnes & offences, hath giuen
 them leave thus to extend and shew their villanous rage
 against vs. I graunt, we haue demerited these and farre
 greater Plagues, and that this rustling fire is sent vp-
 on vs not without the speciall foresight and prouidence of
 God, that taking warning and occasion by these aduersi-
 ties and oppressions, to amende our naughtie liues, we
 may the better renounce our former haunt of licentious
 lustes, and with penitent hearts turne vnto him. And so
 long shall they haue power over vs, as we persist & wil-
 fully wallow in the stinking puddle of our vngodly
 wayes. But if we truly repent and imploze his mercy,
 this wicked Nation shall straightwayes geue place and
 flee before vs lyke sheepe, whom wee shall kill and slea
 down right before vs, and reuenge the iniuries that they
 the yeres passed haue done vnto vs and vnto the spaciety
 of Almighty God, whose Temples and consecrated houses,
 they haue wickedly polluted and most horrible prophane-
 ned. Hereof may you make your full account, vnlesse
 peradventure you thinke that the Asturians, the Canta-
 brians and French (who haue oftentimes vanquished and
 with noxious calamities discomfited them) to haue bene
 better and moze valiaunter me then you your selues be.
 But they were not (beloeue me) and God is no lesse mer-
 ciful to the present state and inward mindes of me now
 aduanced, then he was in the age and life passed. For at the
 godly Sermons and zealous admonitions of Pelagius
 and other holy men, they renounced their vicious wayes
 and turning vnto God besought his helpe to assist and de-
 liuer them out of thraldome. He is so mercifull, and so
 ready to heare the petitions of the faithfull that he neuer
 forsaketh

Of the Saracen Historie. 77

forsaketh nor leaueth destitute and comfortlesse them,
 that vnseignedly and hartely craue ayde at his handes.
 Amende your lyues therefore, and well thinke with
 your selues that you must with toth and nayle, so ende-
 uour your selues, that you may not in any wise for god-
 lynes and faith geue place to any station in the worlde.
 Call to memozy the pishittuate valiaunce, of the Romane
 name, couragiously aduance forward, handle your wea-
 pons manfully and deale your puyssaunt blowes doughti-
 tily among yonder miscreant people, I my selfe will be
 your Capitaine and goe before you, and participate with
 you what euent soeuer Fortune sendeth. I doe assure
 you, the victorie is most certainly in your handes, if
 you will doe as before I haue directed you. They whose
 chaunce shall be to dye in this most godly quarrell and
 Battayle, shall not onely wyne in this worlde, a glori-
 ous fame & renowned praise, but shall be afterward trans-
 ported into the Kingdome of euerlasting lyfe and haue
 theyr names registred in the Booke, of lyfe among the
 electe of God for ever.

After he had made an ende, as many as were habile
 and fitte for warfare, tooke weapon in hande, and fol-
 lowed hym to Ostia. There meaning to receyue at
 pushe of the Pyke, the enemye, so sone as he shoulde set
 any foote on lande. When they evidently descried the
 enemyes appoche, and in sight perused their order, the
 Byschoppe estones commaunding his souldiours to
 bowe the knees of their heartes and earnestly to pray
 vnto God, implozed the diuine assistance and mercy,
 full ayde of hym that is the geuer of all victorie,
 whose wordes and Prayer were in effecte as fol-
 loweth.

O Almighty and most mercifull father which against all prayer,
 the victorie vnto Gedeon with a small number ouer
 the hurge multitude of his enemyes, then which neuer

The second Booke

But perceiving that the same was not possible to be taken but by long Siege, he thence discamped and passed the river Euphrates by a bridge of Shippes. And spoyleing the the Countrey and places there aboutes, assaultyng and battering many strong holdes, whereof some he toke by surrender, he retourned againe to y^e citie. Where he rested not long, but agayne making a warlike voyage & expedition into Siria agaynst the Saracens, bent his whole force to winne Germanicia and wanne it. From thence he removed to the Citie Adaca, which he fiercely besieged and burnt the Suburbes. Whiche Citie albeit the Citizenes and Inhabitantes defended very slackly and negligently, yet could not be wyne and take it. Basilius wondering to see them so secure and negligent in such imminent danger, demaunded of them the cause thereof, unto whom an ancient man of the Citie answered: that it was decreed by destinye that he should neuer winne their Citie maugre all his force and battary, notwithstandinge there should come one of his lygne and race called Constantine which should obtayne the same by conquest, but it should not be his Sonne Constantine, who was with him in his camp at that present.

At whiche aunswere Basilius so fozmed and fumed that he gaue the assault farre moze fiercely, and violently then at any time befoze he had done. But when he saw he could nothing preuaile, he raysed his Siege and went his way, but befoze his departure, he commaunded all his Prisoners to be slayne, least they should stir vp some disturbance and commotion & also because he would be out of feare and not neede to appoynte keepers vnto them. Shortlye after, the Saracens of Tharsus infesting the Romaneyn Provinces, he sent one Andrew surnamed Scythia agaynst them, who acquitting & behauing himselfe agaynst them very honozably & knightly, their courage was alaid and their malicious attempts well bzyled. Whereat the

King

Of the Saracen Historie. 79

King of Tharsus so stamped and scared, that in most horrible and blasphemous fearines he belched out wordes full of theates and spightfull contumelies agaynst God, in his Letters addressed and sent vnto Andrew: Wherein he wrote, y^e if he had inuaded and come in person agaynst hym, it was not the Sonne of Mary that should haue holpen or deliuered him.

A resultinge
Blasphemy.

But it was not long befoze he felt the deserved smarte and due guerdon of his odible myscreauncye. For comming himselfe with moze ayde to his Host, Andrew on the other side in good order marshalled his Campe and gaue vnto him battayle: Where betwene them was fought a cruell conflict, but in the end the Saracenes turned theis backs and fled, in which Chase, most of them were slayne, and among the rest the Kinge himselfe, was there bereft of lyfe and limine.

It chaunced within a while after, that by the sinister meanes and enuious rancour of some backfrindes which spighted at his good successe and valyaunt prowesse, this Andrew was accused to the Emperour his maister, that when he well might, he would not take and wyne the Citie of Tharsus: vnto whiche surmised accusation, such credit was geuen, that Andrew was discharged of his generallshippe, and one Stypiota placed in his Roome. The Saracens which fozsawed no time nor occasion that might further their Affayres and proceedings, perceiving & vnderstanding y^e through this prynces gruge & new change, the watch was nothing at al looked vnto, in the night time set vpon them and slew of them very many, and the rest put to flight. On the other side, the Affricane Saracens besieging Ragusium (whiche is a Citie standinge in the borders and coastes of Illyria) and the Ragusines sending to the Emperour for ayde and rescue, Basilius furnished out a hundred tall Shippes of Warre for their reliefe and sauetie. Whereof the Saracenes hauing intelligence,

z

reised

The second Booke

keyed their Siege and toke their iourney into Italy, and taking the Citie of Barry, most lamentably afflicted and in a maner vniuersallie destroyed with fier murther and rapine the Calabrians, Apuliana Lucanes and Salentines. And being now in minde to deuide Rome and the Empire of all Italy, share and share lyke among themselves, beholde Pope Iohn, greatly moued with pitie and compassion to see his Countrey in such extreme perill, imployed ayde and besought Alberick (whose power was greate in all Hetruria) to assist and loyne side with hym, for the repulse of this dangerous inuasion. Whiche Alberick with a mighty arme that he had leuied in his owne Countrey and partly also mustered and taken vp in and about Rome, encountred them, after they had set foote within the Romane Terrytorie: and at the firste not far from the Citie, in Battaille them vanquished: but afterwards at the riuer of Leyre about the Citie Minturne he so notably discomfited them, that they were now resolved, and fully purposed altogether to depart quight out of Italy. Wherefoze burning all alonge the Sea coaste as they went, they departed into Apulia, and buyldinge a Castle vpon Mount Gargan. and vnder the rydge of the same Mount a Towne strongly fenced and fortifyed for the warres, they continued there for many yeres, soze infesting and spoyling Italye. When they toke Beneuent and it ransacked and after fiered. Whiche terrible example so amazed and astounded the other cities adioining, that without resistance, they receined the Garrisons of that nation within their walles. But ayde beinge sent by the Pope, the barbarous Patumettes doyng all rather with pillage and robberte, then with any iust war, departed without any battaille out of the Romane limits and dominions. And an other state of the same nation comminge out of Affrica, after long and cruell Siege toke the citie of Geane, and at their first entree slue all the defendants,

Italians discomfited the Saracenes.

but

Of the Saracen Historie. 80

but the Paydenes, Damocelles, Patrones and younge boyes they shipped and caried away with them into Affrica. But Dandulus Venetus writeth, that al of the Pale sere returned afterwarde home againe into their Countrey, but how and by what meanes that came to passe, is by none declared nor written. Geane was wonne and taken in the yere after the incarnation 935. And the Saracenes being first dispossessed of the Castle of Mount Gargan by the Dalmatians, and afterwards in many ouerthrowes weakened and vanquished by the Pannonians, were lastly by Ocho Emperour of Germanes in the yere of our Lozde 969. quight expelled and diuened out of Italy. The Greekes, do here make their auant, that Italy was deliuered and rid out of the seruitude and dreadfull oppression of the Saracens through the aide and helpe of their Constantinopolitane Emperoure, in that the French succoured and relieved them, for the good wyl and friendshippe that they bare to their Emperoure. For they say, that the Italyans hearinge Rhagufium to bee rescued and deliuered from the Siege by the Greekish King, submitted themselves vnder the obediens of the Emperour, and requested ayde also for themselves. Wherevpon, Basilus by his Letters directed & addressed vnto the French King, treated with him to aide them, and by him was the Sultane taken and brought to Capua: who afterwarde by the favourable meanes of the Commons of Capua (with whom he had conspired against the King) was set at liberty, and the King being thence expelled, he inferred warre vpon the Capuans, but by the ayde of the Greekes which came against him, he packed and went away. This French King of whom they surmise this talke and Historie, I thinke should be Carolus Crassus the fift Emperoure of Germanes, but for the truth thereof, I referre you to my Authours the Greekes, whom I wyl, shall shewe for themselves touching the credit of the premises.

Z ij

Whiche

The second Booke

a most noble victorie. He wasted and subverted Berrza al saving the Castle, where he found great store of riches and treasure, and taking innumerable of them prisoners deliuered many Chyistians out of thzal dorne. Afterward this Nicephorus Phocas being aduanced to the Empire, Duke Manuel, the Bastard sonne of Leo, was sent with a mighty ppaie against the Saracens into Sicile, where through negligence & want of skill he with all his host was slaine. And at the very same time, Iohn Zimisca (afterward Emperour) being sent into Cilicia, had the vpperhand of the Saracens at y^e Citie of Adana. The Nicephorus himself in persō, with a great power entred into Cilicia and tooke Anabarza, Rosa and Adana thre p^{ro}per Cities of that p^{ro}uince, with many other stronge holdes and Castles: which done, he returned into Cappadocia and there wintered. In the beginning of the next Spring he went thither againe, and sent his brother Leo with a part of his army to Tharsus, & himselfe laid siege to Mopsihestia, through the middle wherof, there ranne a riuer named Sarus. While the Emperour layde harde siege and soze distressed the one side thereof, the Saracens seeing no remedie set fire in that part, and departed vnto the other part, which being also conquered and wonne he slew of them euery man. When the Tharsians hearde thereof, they submitted themselves to the Emperours grace. And within thre daies after, a ppaie was sent out of Egypt to ayde the Tharsians, which could not attaine to land, and in their returne homeward, what with force of weathre and blustering winde, and what with incursions of the Romane Gallages, they were for the most parte all lost and cast away. When the Emperour was returned home to Constantinople, he caused the bzafen gates which he had brought frō the winning of Tharsus & Mopsihestia, of excellent woorkmanship & curious art, to be set on the East & West side of the Castle wth other

new

Of the Saracen Historie. 82

new ornaments & garnishments of his owne cost added thereto. When he invaded Syria and hauing partly beaten downe and partly wasted the Cities about Libanus & the Sea coast, he came before Antioch, which Citie standeth vpon the riuer Orontes. But the Antiochians standing at resistance, and also victual in his Camp waring very scant beside such continuall raine, that the ground was all ouerflowen & couered with water, he was faine to builde a Bastyle on the Mount Taurus, which is at this day is called Maurus, leauing there behind him to infect & skirmish with y^e Antiochians, Michael Burze whom he had aduanced to be one of his chief Nobilitie, & innested with the tytle of the Capitaine of Mount Taurus. And appointed one of his Eunuques named Peter, a valiant, constant & skilful warriour, master of his Tentes and Pauillions to see order taken & p^{ro}vided for the wintering of his host in Cilicia, after which order so take, he returned to Constantinople. Burzes with many venturous leaders & excursions laid soze to the charge of the Antiochian Saracens, and them greatly molested, studying by all meanes to wyne honour and glorie by deedes of Armes and to take the Citie. Vpon a time he p^{ro}uilly measured out the altitude and height of the Tower of the same, and preparing scaling Ladders equal in height therewith, in a very darke and snowe winter nyght, he came secretly and without making any noyse vnder the walles of the Citie: where setting vp his Ladders, with CCC. men that he had brought thither with him for the same purpose, he mounted vp, and kyled the watchmen and keepers of the Tower and as many as hee could mete withall: and straightwayes dispatched a Currou to the Paister of the Tentes and Pauillions to aduertise him, how the case stood and what he purposed to do, wilking him speedily to come with more power to ayde him and be partaker of that glorious & noble enterprise.

The

Antiocheta
hen.

The second Booke

The Antiochians knowing their chiefe Towre to be taken, ranne couragiouslye to repell and dispossesse the Romanes out of the same.

Now the Master of the Tentres had in charge from the Emperour, that he should not in any wise invade Antioch, because the common bzute went, that the captiuitie of that Citie did portende within a while after, the Emperours confusion, whiche bzed in him such doubtfull cares, that he knew not what to doe in that case, nor which way to take. Nevertheless loath, that so many valiaunt men should through his default perishe, & thinking it no point of humanytie to see them thus fall into the lapse for want of a small ayde, marched with all his power and invaded Antioche: at whose comming the Saracenes were so dismayed that their hartes fainted and their stomakes immediatly quayled. Burzes & his company which before dispayred of any help or remedye, looking for nothing but present death, tooke new hart agrace and were reuiued, and bursting open the Gates with his battayle Are, made free passage and ingresse for the master of the Tentres and his traine to enter.

Thus was Antioche one of the noblest Cities in the world, brought into the power of the Romanes, whiche shortly after, in the time of the Emperoure Iohn Zimisca, the Saracenes with all their ioynt powers and forces both of the Orient and occident attempted to recover. And so vnder the conduct of the Caliph of Cairoan in Affrica, (because the power of the Caliph of Syria was now soze weakened and brought to a lowe ebbe) they planted their Siege about it. Whose inuasions and malyce the Citizens and Inhabitauntes manfullye and constantlye withstood, tyll the Emperour might hereof be certyfyed. Who hauing intelligence of this generall conspiracie of the Gentiles, commaunded his Princes of Mesopotamia to ayde his besieged Frēdes and Subiectes. Who

according

Of the Saracen Historie. 83

according to his charge and commission in a pitched battaile (wherein the Saracenes were in number farre more then the Romanes) them disparled, chased and discomitted.

Now because I see the empire of the Saracens to bzake apace towarde an ende and finall ruine, we must before we procede any further, briefely and compendiouslye wyse of the remnauntes and reliques of them that yet lurked in Affrica and Spayne: and firste wee wyll speak of Spayne, then afterward of Affrica.

In Spayne therfore Ramire Kinge of Lyon in the yere of our Saviour Chyist 901. making war vpon the Saracenes, destroyed a Towne of theirs named Madrice and put them to flight nere vnto Osina and made Beniam King of Saragoza Tributary vnto hym. Whom (afterward rebelliouslye ioyninge in league with Abduramen King of Corduba and turninge to his olde homyt agayne) Ramire eittones vanquished and toke Prisoner in battayle nere to a Towne called Symancas, wherein there were flayne of the Saracenes thyrtye thousande, and many other antoyances and harimes did hee vnto them: Afterward lying at the Siege of Talauera, he ouercame the Toletane Saracenes whiche came to reple the Siege and to rescue the Citie, of whom vii. pp. were taken and xii. pp. flayne. After this Sancius kinge of Lyon beinge depriued and dyluen out of his kingdome by his owne people came to Abduramen King of Corduba to be cured of a certayne disease by the help of his Physicians, whom for conning and knowledge he had heard to be the expertest and skilfullest that were then in all the world. Whom the king of Corduba did not onely cause to be healed, but also with his power and help (maugre all his foes) restored him to his Kingdome and dignitie. But after that hee was dead, the Saracenes wanne Symancas, Duengas Sepulueda and Gormas, Townes belonging to the kingdome of Lyon and rased Zamorra. And within a while

As

after

The second Booke

after, destroyed and euerted Portugall the head of all Lusitanic and Compostella, After the death of Abduramen, Allagib his Successoure in that kingdome, naming himself Almanfor (which is as much to say) as the Protector of king Manfor his Lozde and maister, because he hoped thereby to rather allure the peoples goodwills, and vnder that coloure to insinuate himselfe into their fauours (for at that time Manfor reigned at Marrocco. Which Citie (as we haue afoze shewed) was the heade royall of all the Saracenes Empire Occidentall, vnder whose iurisdiction and rule all the inferiour kinges of the Saracenicall nacion in Spayne lyued) gathered a mighty power and invaded the Territozies of the Castellonians, Lyon and Biskaye.

The Citie of Lyon he almost utterly defaced, the Towers and Bulwarkes thereof, which were all of sparble, he rased and beat downe to the ground, leauinge onely one, vntouched and vblemished, to the intent that the memozye of the beautye and gorgeousnes of that Citie might appeare and remayne to posteritie. He toke Acuria and Coiaca which is now called Valeneja (not that Valentia which standeth vpon the midland Sea, but another in the kingdome of Leon by the Pyrenes) and Sagnium with many other Townes. And in the pryncedome of the Castellonians, he destroyed Olina, Alcobetla, Berlanga and Atienza: and of the Gallician Townes, he toke S. James, and commaunded the Belles to be carryed away thence to Corduba, where he used them in steede of Lampes in his prophane Temples. & in this sorte he continued outraging and keeping sharpe warres for the space of twelue yeares. Till at length Bermudes King of Lyon with the powers of the Castellonians, the Byskayes and his owne had vnto hym battayle in a place called Calataicor. This battayle was fierrely foughten on both sides for the space of a whole daye, where were

slaine

Of the Saracen Historie. 84

slayne of the Saracenes many thousandes, and with the Almanfor with all his retinew and adherents fled and shortly after died for sorrow of his ouerthrow. The Spaniards ruffling and spoiling their camp, found therein great booties & prayes which they at their flight had left behind them. Abdemelick greatly moued to his fathers misfortune, and purposing to recover and haue amendes for the same, was also vanquished. But afterward in the reigne of Alphonsus the son of Bermudes, the Saracenes agayne invading the borders & frontiers of the Castellonians, destroyed Auila & toke Ormetum with any other townes. And Alphonsus reebidde the citie of Lyon. After all this, there sprang vp ciuile warres among the Spanish Saracenicall Kinges and Princes, whereby the power of the Chyistians in that prouince daily increased, insomuch that Mahomet Enasir Bishop of Marrocco being vanquished in Gotalonia nere to Valentia and ix. M. Saracenes slaine with him in the yere of our redemption 1150. the Chyistians within xxx. yeres folowing, recovered Valentia, Deuia, Alicante, Muria, new Carthage, Corduba, Syuile, Iuen and Vbeda, and the Saracenes had no more in their possession but onely the kingdome of Granada, from wherice at length they were utterly expelled and driven out by Ferdinando the last king of the Tarracomans, (or Aragon) Grandfather by the Mothers side to Charles the first late Emperour.

In Africa a newe Prophet haunting himself to be one of the right ligne & race of Mahomet whose name was Elmahelis, a man both bozne & brought vp in the Mountains, about the yere of our Lord 1000 bzued a newe bozyle and set abroch certayne quaryte fassions about Religion. He expelled out of their kingdomes, the high Bishop of Cairoan (which Citie before we shewed was not farre off from Carthage, & was the head Citie in the mayne land of Africa) & also Abraem the king of Marocco: which done, he

At ii

subdued

Granada
was
wonne
from
the
Saracenes
& Inudeles
by King
Ferdinando
Grandfather
to Charles
the first Anno
D. 1492.

The second Booke

subdued both the Mauritanies, all Africa, all Numidia, and Lybia unto the borders of the Negroes and Egypt, constituting his royall and pontificall Seate at Marocco. The King of Marocco, fleeing from Habdulmumen who pursued after him with part of Elmahelis Army, arrived and came to Oranum, a Citie situate vpon the inland Sea in Mauritania Cæsariensis. But the Citizens not receiuing him, the poore wretched King being comfortlesse and without all hope of better fortune, with his wife, who for want of better stee roade behind him (both on one horse) went by into the toppe of a very high mountaine lying into the Sea and there casting the spurres into the horse sides, cast himself, his wife and horse down headlong from a craggie rocke, and so all three dyed together at one instant, and were found in the Schoole all huddled and dismembred. And Habdulmumen returning back to Marocco, found Elmahelis dead, and was created King and Bishop in his place. Whose posteritie and Successours, that is to wit Iosippus his Sonne, Mansor his Sonne and Machomet Enasir, of whom we made mention before, his Sonne's sonne, enjoyed & possessed that Kingdome. But when the tenth Sonnes, after the death of Mahomet, their father, contended and bickered among themselves for the Garlande, the house of the Marinines popped into the Kingdome of Fez, and the Habduludean familie invaded the Kingdome of Telenfine, and displacing there the Tunetane Magistrate, created and made there a King. And all the other Kings & Princes of Africa renounced their homage and revolted from the Kings of Marocco: whereby the power of the Saracens decreased in Africa aswell as in other places and the name of their Emperre utterly extinct.

The

The Thirde Booke. 85

Wherein is expressed and plainly de-

clared the euerlion of the Saracenicall Empire and the originall beginning, continuance & increase of the Turkishe domination, till the first yeere of the raigne of Ottomanne, from whom, Iouius and diuerse others both Greeke and Latine Turcographers begin their Histories: also the first originall of the Tartarians, Mamalukes, Assassines, and Sophians: Containing a true and perfect discourse of Turkishe Affaires for three hundredth yeeres (space before Ottomanne, for pleasure and varietie very delectable.



At now must I procede in a newe kind of order, and discourse by matters most worthy to be remembred: for we haue already so orderly & successively treated of Saracenicall sayes, that now we be come by order of Historie, to speake of those times, wherein (the auncient and true Saracene Empire decaying and as it were the lawfull stocke and offspring of Mahomet excluded and dispossessed) Bastards and bystartes of an other ligne stepped in and vsurped the principallitie, A people (I saye) shuffling in for the best game, and bearing themselves, not (as the other) vnder a painted shewe and coniozable gloze of gale Religion and holiness, but planted themselves in a more firme and hard Emperre, mainteining and amplifying the same by force of Armes and violence. Whose State differeth as much from the former Emperre, as the hardnesse of Iron from the softnesse of Leade. For albeit the hyrgenes of the Saracenicall

Saracenes were as the right child of Mahomet and Turkes in comparison but Bastards.

A. iiij.

racenicall

The thirde Booke

racenical dominion were great and mighty, (inſomuch that vnder the patched cloake and pretence of falſe doctrine and diabolical Religion, it overflowed and almoſt drowned the whole world) yet the violent rage thereof was by the valiant encounter of couragious ſouldiours and partiall knightes from time to time either bybled and reſſeſſed, or at leaſt, brought vnder ſuch awe, that many times they were faine to keepe bill vnder wing, and to be pent within narrower rōme then they were beſoze. Yea many times, ſuch flames of ciuil diſcord among theſelues burſt out, that ſame being diſperſed into ſundry partes, & farre diſſeuered from the fire where it was firſt ſozged about Babilon and Arabic, waied in proceſſe of time ſo keuecold & froſtbitte, y they were not able to wagge & beſtirre themſelues as they did beſoze.

And ſo beeing diſtract and pulled from the whole ſpalle, and conſequently made weaker, were either cleane baniſhed and buried in the pit of Obluion, or elſe wyth an other fire in ſome other place newly kindled, were conſumed and quite burnt euen with their owne flame: which thing hapned vnto this aſozenamed ſozge, till ſuch time that new and ſtronger ſmitheſe toke y office in hand, & ſozged a harder meſſall vpon the Anuill, to harden and ſtrengthen y ſoftneſſe of this Leade, & thzoughly to beare out y dignitie of y ſhop. For although (as it euidently appeareth by y which hath bene already declared in the two firſt Bookes) our Anceſſozs & Predeceſſozs haue continually warred w the Saracens welnigh 400 yeres ſpace, with diuers ſoztune and doubtfull victozye, in ſo much that although their power euen from their firſte beginning were very mightie and great, and Chriſtendome all that tyme neuer quiet, but continually ſtoted in ciuil diſcord, beſide the often incurſions of Barbarous Nations, the Emperours of Conſtantinople ſheuing themſelues (that while) no better then ſpeycoches & effeminate per-
that

Of the Saracen Historie. 86

ſons: yet vnder they oftentimes plague them with manye great overthzowes, and recovered out of theyz poſſeſſions ſometyme Syria, ſometyme Armenia, now a part of Perſia and now ſome other Provinces: but yet alwayes and ſtill they kept in their poſſeſſion all Europa, ſaueing a peece of Spayne onely, Asia the leſſe, Media, and the Kingdomes of Parthia Bithynia and Cappadocia with many other Realmes and Kingdomes. But the power of the Turkes encroching and wyppning vpon vs now almoſt ſoz the ſpace of 600. yeres, they neuer could reſſeſſe, neyther hinder the courſe and proceeding of their Emperze, neyther yet expel and dzyne them out of ſuch places as they had once gotten. Of ſuch ſozce is warlike diſcipline and ſo much differeth the fierceneſſe of the ſozthz people from the tendernes and effeminacie of the ſouthern. Now, whereof and by what occaſion, they bzake out, we ſhall now declare.

Baſilius Porphyrogenicus being Emperour of Conſtantinople about the yere of our Lord 1000. many Tyrantes were ſlled ſoz y Carſo and diuided among them, the Empire of Saracens, as beſoze in the laſt Booke was ſheued, whereof ſoure alwayes contending ſoz y Supremacie, & keeping deadly warres one w another ſoz y tryal of their titles, there began great diuſion & hartburning betwene Mahomet Prince of Perſians, Coraſmiorians & of ſeuere other people on the one part, and the Caliph of Syria whoſe royall ſeate & Metropolitane ſea was at Bagadet. In which wars, Mahomet being put to y worz and by y Babilonian (thzough helpe and ayde of Sclerus and y Roman captiues) vanquiſhed, ſent to y Turkes ſoz aide, whoſe helpe and furtheraunce at a pinche (as aſoze hath bene ſheued, the Saracenes ſoz certayne yeres paſſed were accuſtomed in theyz warres too ble and ioyne vnto them, and the rather becauſe they profeſſed and embraced euen at the firſte eruptions,
and

Antiocheta
ken.

The thirde Booke

finde that they were begotten and dyd come of the
wyld Faunes.

But the Turkes and Tussagetes descendyng of
their race and inhabytyng the Northside of Mount Cau-
casus as befoze wee haue shewed, differed muche
from them as well in lyfe, as manners and Lawes:
beinge (notwithstandyng) so lyke amonge them-
selues and so lynked together in League one with an
other, that they were taken and accompted for one
People, and peraduenture they were all one, and were
so called and named (as prophane Persones) by the Ar-
menians their Neighbour, from whome they recei-
ued their Kites, and whiche were called Sagæ (as
much to saye) as holie. For this woꝛde Teu-
zices (as in the Seconde Booke was shewed) signify-
eth in their language Gentiles or a prophane Peo-
ple. For these names are of many Writers so ming-
led and taken together, that the one seemeth to be
they name, the other their Surname.

Procopius saith, these People were nothing nare
to the other Hunnes, neyther had any thinge to doo
with them: but that they bordered vpon the North
partes of Persia, that is to witte Armenia. For
Armenia was euer lyghtlye subiect to the Crowne of
Persia. Neyther were they Wanderers from place
to place, (as hauyng no habitation saynge there,
where their Cattayle stayed and grazed, as the other
Hunnes or Scythians were): but had in their Posses-
sion and inhabtyed the beste Plottes and moske fertile
Regyon that was amonge the Donnes and Mount-
taynes rounde aboute, and amonge the Hunnes, they
onely were white of complexion and coloure, and not so
buglye nor so sterne visaged, neyther tyng so sauagelye
and beaulye as the others dyd: but lyke true Subiectes
liued orderly in due obedience and humble subiection vnder

Of the Saracen Historie. 88

der one Prince, whome they accepted as their head and
king: hauing also a well ordered Common wealth,
with due execution and imbracyng of Justice and other
politickall Lawes, both at home amonge themselues,
and abroade with other forraigne Nations borderynge
vpon them, as the Greeques, Romanes and dy-
uers other ciuile and well gouerned Nations dyd
also.

The chiefe Citie of all their Kingdome was cal-
led Gorga. The noblest sorte and wealthiest per-
sones amonge them, had continuallye seiourninge at
their Houses as Castles, twenty or moe of their fa-
mylier Frændes, accordynglye as their Substaunce and
Rychesse extended, with whom, both wealth, authori-
tie and power was in common: as the same Proco-
pius sheweth, and as their institution and manner of
lyuinge to this day witnesseth.

Some there be, whiche referre the firste originall of
the Turkes, to those tenne Tribes of Israel: whiche
(as wee reade in Iosephus) were translated into
Media. For profe and Testimonye whereof, they
alledge the likenesse and similitude of their maners
and conuersation.

Some referre their pedagre to Gog and Magog, of
whome there is mencion made in the holie Scriptures:
from whom, we rather be of opynion that the Tartarians
yea and peraduenture also the Gothes be lineallye des-
cended. And some there be whiche doo deriue the of-
springe and Progenie of them: from the aunient Tro-
ians. Whose seuerall opinions by waye of Argu-
ment, either to confirme and allowe or confute and dis-
proue, is no parte of our purpose and intent in this
place, sythince our onely meanyng is not to reason vpon
probabilities, but to byng such certaintye known
truthes

256 ij

*These were of
the same sort
as those which
were called
in the 2. c. 2. of
the Arabian war*

The thirde Booke

truthes, as are in the histories and Chronologies of ancient writers aswell of Greekes and Thracians as of the Turkes themselves and other nations confining vnto them, published and mentioned which is euen so as before we haue declared.

Muchumet therfore desired ayde of their Prince in his warres against the Caliph of Babilon, throughte whose helpe and balaunce (sent vnto him vnder the conduct of Tangrolipix Mucalet,) he encountred with Pisafire the Babylonian Caliph, and him with litle labour and lesse daunger discomfited, by reason that the Arabians were not hable to abyde the thicke shotte of the Turkische Arrowes. Being from this warre retourned home with victorie, he mynded also to vse the ayde of y same Turkes in his warres against the Indians. At which season the Turkes weary of that seruice, desired leaue of Muchumet, not onely to retourn home, but also that a garrison might be appointed to waite them in safetie ouer the bridge that stode vpon the Riuer Araxes. Which request he tooke in suche disdain and impaciencie y with frowning looke he charged them from thenceforth not to vize him any moze with that sute. The Turkes had no other way in their retourn homeward, but must needs passe the said Riuer Araxes, which is y limite and Border of the kingdome of Persia: ouer the which there was no other Bridge but onely this, which was on bothe sides merueylous strongly garbed and fortified with Blocke houses, Turrettes and Garrisons. The Turkes being further dainger principally thanke away e as closely as they could, departed into the desert of Carbonitis. For considering their number was not aboue thre thousande men, they durst not aduenture to fight and buckle with such a great multitude. Being in those deserttes, they made many bagaries into the Saracenes Territozies, and wasted they Country terribly. Whereat Muchumet

Of the Saracen Historie. 89

chumet merueylously stomacking and stozming, sent an Armye of 30000. men against them, committing the charge and conducting of the whole Armie vnto tenne Tribunes of y noblest, stoutest and wisest in his traine. They being come nere to their enemies, would not aduenture to enter into the desert, for feare they should be distressed for lacke of water and victuall, but encamped themselves euen in the verge entraunce into the same desert.

The Captaine of the Turkes, hauing intelligēce by his Espialles, of the Persians appoach, called his Souldiours together, and making them pziue to his deuise, purposed sodainly to set vpon them and vnawares to surpziise, both the Saracenes and Persians, while they were yet secure and mistrusted nothing. And speeding apace toward them by great iournages, within two dayes was come nere vnto them. The thirde night he set vpon them being in their Tenttes carelesse and quiet, suspecting nothing lesse then any such matter: whom he put to flight euen at the first onset. After this discomfiture of his enemies, hee fell to spoyle and ranfacke their Tenttes, where finding great store of Wagons, Hozles, and Moneys, lyued no longer by Robbery and Theft lyke a Vagabonde or fugitiue (as afore) but from thence forth pitched hys Tenttes and encamped himselfe abroade in the open playne. When the report of his victorie and good fortune was blowne abroade, there resorted vnto him from all quarters thereabout, all suche Cutthroates and Villaines as for their vngacious demerites feared punishment, with a great route of Slaues and pylfering Roges lyuing of the spoyle of others, insomuch that within a whyle hys Armye grew to the number of 50000. men. Muchumet stozmyng marueylously at this ouerthrowe and discomfiture of hys Hoaste, caused the eyes of those tenne whom he had appoynted Captaines

Traynge of
Muchumet
toward his
owne men.

23b. iij.

The thirde Booke

vaines to bee pulled out, and threatened the rest of the Souldiours which fledde out of the Battaille, that so soone as he had vanquished his foes, he woulde cloathe them all, in womans apparell, and leade them as gaying stockes in Triumph befoze him. This done he himselte in person marcheth against his Enemies. His men, who befoze had bene vanquished of the Turkes, considering the thzeates and shamefull handling that was ment towarde them, reuolted from Muchumet and fledde to Tangrolipix. Who now hauing his Armie encreased with such a warlike Crewe of freshe Souldiours, with all his whole power together, came against Muchumet, by dint of moztall battaile to trie and finally determine the cause of controuersie betwene them.

Muchumet with his power of Saracenes, Persians, Arabians and Cabirians well appoynted and armed, to the number of syue hundred thousande, and a hundred Elephantes with Towers on theyr backes, mette his Enemye at a place called Aspacha: where betwene them was fought a cruell and bloudie Battayle and many slayne on bothe partes. In this confliate, Muchumet, as hee rode vnhaiedly from ranke to ranke, charyng his Souldiours and exhorting them to doe valiantly, by meanes of the foltering and stumbling of his horse, fell downe and brake his necke. He being once deade, his Armye fell to a Parley and composition with the Turkes, and so with one consente and wyll of all sides, Tangrolipix was proclaymed King of Persians. Who immediately opened a waye and passage for his people into Persia. Of whom a great multitude went thither, and oppressing the Persians and Saracenes, perforce possessed all the Countrey of Persia. They also honoured Tangrolipix by the stile of tytle of Sultane, whiche is almuch to saye as a

What a
Souldane
signifieth.

most

Of the Saracen Historie. 90

most Soveraigne Emperour or King of Kinges. He displaced the Inhabitautes of the Countrey out of theyr Offices, Roomes and Dignities, and placed his owne Nation and people in the same, and amonge them (empowering and utterly oppressing the Countrey bozne persons) diuided and parted the whole Region of Persia.

Also Daber, Prince of Egypt, being in League and amitie with the Romanes, falsctyed his othe and promise whiche befoze hee had condiscended vnto, and destroyed the Temple at Hierusalem wherein was the Sepulchre of our Saviour Christ, and all the other holie places in the same. For Hierusalem at that tyme was vnder his obedience and dominion. And within a whyle after, hee sent a flote into the Isles called Cyclades to trie some maistries there: which flote was encountred and mette withall, by the Duke of Samos, who tooke .xii. of them as Prizes with all the men and Capitaines therein, and the rest to his hygge laude and glory dispersed and scattered.

After this, Argyropylus being Emperour of Constantinople, the Arabians tooke all suche Cities as Nicephoras and Iohn Zimisca had taken in Syria and slewe the Garrisones that were left to keepe them. And the Prince of Chalep with continuall incursions infested Antioche and dyuerse other Cities and Countreies confyning vpon Syria, that were subiecte to the Romane Emperre. By whom also the Capitayne of Antioche (Constantine being yet a lyege) was shamefullye vanquished, and hardly escaped with the losse of manye of his men. In whose office and roome the Emperour appoynting another, went himselte with a competent number of well furnished Souldiours to snaffe the pretended outrage and insolent demeanure of the same Prince of Chalep.

Tha

The thirde Booke

The Chalepians hauing vnderstanding of his approche, sent Ambassadors with giftes and rewardes to mete him on the way and to desire pardon for their former temeritie and vndutifull behauiours towarde him, offering agayne to submit themselves and from thenceforth to become his true Vassalles and liege people. Whiche submission and peace, although manye of his Lordes and Capitaines exhorted him to accepte, yet hee hoping easely to subdue the Saracenes and thereby to purchase vnto himselfe a great name and glozy, would needs march on, and continue his voyage into Syria. And when he had strongly encamped himselfe nere to Chalep, the Arabians beinge bolde and nimble fellows, and naked, with good swift Horses vnder them, lyke Dimyplances, planted themselves in euery corner in Ambushes. So if any of their enemies went out on foraging or to fetch water they sodenly bzake out and either slew or take the prisoners. By reason whereof both the Souldiours and their Horses fainted for thirste and were not hable to doe any seruice.

Thus they being better acquainted and enured with these incursions and skirmishes toke heart a grace, accusing the Romanes of Slouth and cowardise, and shewing themselves in great plumpes, descending sodenly from the Hylles with great shoutes and cryes, so terrified and dismayed the Romane Host, that they tourned their backs & fled. The emperor himself being there in great danger of his lyfe and forsaken of his Mesopotian Souldiours which for feare shifted for themselves and left hym alone, had fallē in the Lapse and bene taken Prisoner, yf one of his company had not set him vpon his Horse and aduised him to saue him selfe by flight. The Saracenes supposinge this their slainge to be done but for a pollicie and for the nonce pursued not the chase, but entred into the Emperours Tentcs, where taking a few noble personages

Emperoure
in great dan
ger.

Of the Saracen Historie. 91

sonages and spoylinge his rich Paulion wherein was great store of Treasure and princely furniture, departed thence and retzred back lading their Horses with as much as they could cary away.

In their retourne back they ouercame the countrey of Mesopotamia. And an Egyptian Fleet waited the coast of Illyricum, but they could not goe cleare away. For the Greekish Fleet encountered with them and burnt many of them, the rest which escaped by flight, by tempest were drowned in the Sicilian Sea. Also an other Flaue of a thousand Sagle or there about, being sent out of Aphrica, spoyled many Ilandes and places bordering vpon the sea Coastcs. But the Romane gallayes chaunceing vpon them toke certayne, sonke many, and sent 500. of them prisoners to the Emperour. And George Maniaces, pzo- most of all the Cities along the Riuer Euphrates, lying at Samosata, conquered and rased a citie called Edessa, where he finding an Epistle of our Saviour Iesus Christ written with his owne hande, he sent the same vnto the Emperoure. This Citie afterwarde in the Emppye and raigne of Michael Paphlagon was besieged by the Arabians, and had bene wonne if Constantine Capitaine of Antioch, and Brother to the Emperour had not succoured and relieved the poore Defendauntes that were within it.

After that the Prince of Egypt was dead, the Quene his wyfe being a Christian and her son concluded a truce with the Romanes, to endure for xxx. yeres, and caused the Temple and other holie places at Ierusalem to be re- stozed and newe reedified. About this time two Brothers both Saracenes, iountlie and with equall authoritie raigning in Sylicie, fell at discorde and variaunce betwene themselves, wherevpon the one of them desired ayde and assistance of the Emperoure. Who immediat-

Ec

lia

The thirde Booke

lye sent George Maniacs a noble Counsaillour and expert Warriour with a tall compaigne of Men to ayde hym.

But befoze he could come into Sycile, the two Brothers were reconcyled and made Fréendes and ioyninge bothe their powers together to repulse, Maniacs from landing in the Ilandes, sent also for ayde to Carthage. But when both the armies were clasped together in battayle, the victorie fell vnto the Romanes, who gaue vnto the Saracenes a notable ouerthrow and slew of them a great number. Which done, the Generall raised and destroyed fill Cities: and from thence marching styl forwarde, recovered and restozed againe all Sycile to the Romane Emperre.

A pollicie
of the Saracens
to haue
taken the citie
Edessa,

But in the Orient, it was a sayze hap, that the Citie of Edessa had not bene surprisid by the Saracenes. For twelue of the chiefe Princes or Nobles of them brought five hundred Camelles to Edessa, every one laden with two Chestes a péece, and in every Chest an armed souldiour, pretending and saying that their coming was, to present the Emperoure with certaine rewardes and giftes. Their intent was, if they might haue bene let in, the next night with their armed souldiours in the Chestes to haue taken the Citie. But their subtil strageme and crafty conueighance misied of hoped effect by this meanes.

A Begger
saues the
Citie.

There was a certayne Begger, an Armenian boyne, whiche could well vnderstande and speake the Arabian language. This poore Armenian begging the charitable almes of the Arabians which lodged abroad without the Citie, chaunced to heare one of them in the Chestes asking another of his fellowes where they were, and immediatly departing from them went into the Citie, and discovered this trecherous traine to the Princes.

Who

Of the Saracen Historie. 92

Who by this meanes hauing ynckeling and intelligence thereof, left the Princes of the Arabians banquetynge and making good chère in the Citie, and with a conuenient number of Citizens issued out of the Gates, and openinge the Chestes, kyled all the armed men in the same. And comming back againe into the Citie, kyled also all the Princes and Capitaines of them, sauing onely one, whose two handes he chopped off, and curtayling his nose and eares, sent him away packinge with a Flea in his eare, to carry newes home of their good spede and aduerture.

On the other side, when the Caliph of Cairoan in Aphrica vnderstode of the losse and destruction of his Armies, he went himselfe in person with a greater Armye into Sycile. Against whom, Maniacs came with a maine power, commanding the Armye all of his prynces diligently to loke to his charge and so narrowly to scoure the Coastes and keepe the Sea, that the vanquished Carthaginians shoulde by no meanes escape. And then both the Armies graped together in a terrible and moste sharpe conflicte, wherein were slaine so many of the Saracenes, that they could by no meanes be numbzed. But their Prince escaping out of the Félde, embarked himselfe with all spede possible in a Bizandine and retourned home in safetie.

Now, Tangrolipix Kinge of Persia hauynge set all the affaires of his Kingdome in good stave and order, made Warre vpon Pisafire chiefe Governour of Babylon and ouercame him in many battayles and last of all slew him.

And so the Babylonians being subdued and annered to his Domynions, he sent Cudume his Nephew with an Armye againste Carbesse Kinge of Arabie.

Cc y

De

The second Booke

Of whom Cudume being overcome, desired by his Ambassadors of Stephan Regent of Media (which countrey is now called Baas Prachan) to geue him leave with hys people to passe throughe the borders of his Countrey and iurisdiction. Which request, Stephan did not onely flatly denie, but also armed himselfe and went against him. Notwithstanding he lost many of his men, and was himselfe taken Prisoner. And so Cudume retourning home to Tangrolipix, recompted vnto him his successe in the Median warre, and highly extolled the fertilitie and fruitfulness of that region, affirming that the same was verie easie to be wonne. But Tangrolipix being soze of fended with him for his late discomfiture, went himselfe against the Arabians. Cudume for feare fled away with his company, and taking a Citie of the Chorasmiarians named Pafar, revolted from the Sultan. But the Sultane thinking at this matter and letting it slippe for a while, helde on his voyage with his whole Host against the Arabians, by whom he also was put to flight, and so coming home with moze losse then gaine, with the greatest part of his Host besieged Cudume. But Cudume relying great trust and assurance in the naturall situation and strength of the place, long time resisted him. In the meane season, Tangrolipix sent Asan his other Nephew surnamed Surdus with xx. thousand appointed Souldiours into Media. Who rushing with his inuasive power into the Province, and joining Battaille with the Romanes was with his whole Host (excepting a very few) slaine. The Sultan vnderstanding therof, and minding to winne his honour againe for so notable a losse and overthrowe, sent one Alim Abramie with a hundred thousand fighting men into the same Province againe. The Regent of the Countrey sent to the Emperour for aide, & thought it best for him not to fight with the Turkes till Liparites, Princes of a part of Iberia were come with his Iberians

to

Vaas Ma
Khan

Turkes goe
to warre.

Of the Saracen Historie. 93

to ayde him. The Romanes kept themselves within their fortres & strong Holdes, wherefoze Alim, seeing that they minded not to trie matter with him by force of battaille, assaulted a small untwalled village called Arzen, where innumerable wealthy Merchantes dwelled, supposing the same would haue bene got and surrendered vnto him at the first byunt, & in a manner without resistance. But it happened not altogether according to his expectation. For the Colonnesmen stopped his wayes and passages, with great Timber logges & threw dartes and other weapons at them from the toppes of their houses, and slew many of them. Alim after that he had giuen the assaulte vnto it by space of five continual dayes, & sawe the stout hearts of the Citizens in defending, and y he could not conveniently lye any longer at the Siege therof, threw wilde fire into the houses, which flamed, and in euery place so raged that the Inhabitants to saue their liues, fled. And by this meane the Turkes waite the pillage. Wherein they found much Gold and store of richesse which the fire had not consumed. From thence they discompted & sped them toward the Romane Armye, vnto whose ayde Liparites was now come with the power of Iberia.

Both the Battayles joining together a little before nyght, the Turkes were discomfited and put to flight, whom the Romanes chased and pursued till farr in the nyght. Albeit in this confite Liparites (who ledde the one wing of the Battayle) was taken Prisoner and brought to the Sulcan, for whose ransom and redemerie the Emperour sent a great masse of money and other rewarde to the Sulcan, desiring him also that a peace and league might be concluded betwene them. But the Sulcan sending backe all the money and gifts, frankly deliuered Liparites without any ransom, aduising him after that tyme, neuer to beare arms

C. lii.

mour

The thirde Booke

mour against the Turkes. And beside this, hee sent an Ambassadour vnto the Emperour. one of the worthiest in degree in all his Courte called Seriphes: which Dignitie is so high among them, that after the deathe of the Caliph, the Seriphes succedeth in his roome. For the Turkes euen at the firste, embracing the doctrine of Mahomet, reuerenced and had in great honour and estimation their Caliphas as Bishops and Bishoppes of the Lawe: notwithstanding they debarrred them from wearing the Imperiall Crowne or entermiedling with any iudiciall power in prophane matters within their Emppye. This Seriphes Ambassadour, coming to Constantinople was brought before the Emperour, before whom he proudly shewed his Commission, which was, to demande a Tribute to be payde by the Emperour to the Sultane. But he was sayde to retourne without shewing his errand. Wherefore the Sultane taking Pepper in the nose, made warre and went himselfe agaynst the Romanes. And when hee was come as farre as Comum a Citie of Iberia, because the Inhabitantes of the Countrey had included themselves and theyr goodes with all thinges necessaries in Holdes and Castles (whereof the number at that tyme in Iberia was great) and hearing that the Romanes mustered and assembled a great power about Caesarea, to come agaynst him, hee retized without doing any notable exploit: worthy of remembrance backe agayne into Media: where lykewyse finding all places walled and bulwarke, his full determination was to wyne his purpose by Siege.

And first of all hee attempted the wyning of Manzicherte, a Citie standing in the playne champion Countrey, walled and strengthened with thre stronge Walles, having within it many fountaynes and

Of the Saracen Historie. 94

and lyevely springes of Water, which Citie by the foresight and prouision of the Townesmen was verie well walled. And encamping himselfe nere to the Walles, gaue an assault vnto the same. xxx. continuall dayes without any ceasing, with all kinde of Engynes and Warlike Instrumentes. But in the end, perceyuing his attempte to be in vayne, and hauing no hope of better successe, raysed his Siege and departed with the losse of many of his people. When he pursued his Nephew Abramie, who was no lesse confederate and tooke parte with his Cousin Cutlume, and him in Battayle nere to the Citie of Pafaris ouerrame and slew.

But Cutlume with sixe thousande in his companye, (among whom was Melech the Sonne of Abramie, saued himselfe by flighte, and by his Ambassadors sued to the Emperour Constantine Ducas to be receiued into his fauour and protection, and that a League myght be confyrmmed betweene them: staying for an answer in Persarmenia at the Citie Charc. But because the Sultane solowynge at his beeles, was commynge with a power into Iberia, Cutlume fledde into Arabia Felix. The Sultane spoiled and wasted all as hee went in Iberia: but hearyng that Michael was commynge with an Armye agaynst hym, and thinking it muche dishonorable for him to deale with the Emperours Sernaunt, retized agayne into his owne Territozies, leauynge behinde hym, one of his Captaynes named Samuch, a man of base parentage and lowe birth, but in partiall affaires a ryght excellent Captayne. This Samuch remainynge still he bynde, with 3000. men, coasted and strayed about the playne Countrey of the greater Armenia, and with many sodayne incursions infested the frontiers of the Roman Emppye.

After

The thirde Booke

After this Diogenes being Romane Emperour the Sulcan againe with a great power entred within þe p̄ciunt and limytes of the Romane dominions: But the Emperour coming with an Army against hym, hee retired backe: and deuiding his Host into two partes, sent the one into South Asia & þe other into north Asia, which spoyle all as they went, and sodaynly surprizing the citie of neto Cesaria: sacked it and being full laden with bootie and pray departed thence. But the Emperoure when he heard of it, takinge with him a Bande of lustier and nimble souldiours, coasting the nearest way ouer hill and dale, through thicke and thinne, to get betwene his enemies and home, so vigoziouse and sodaynly set vpon them and therewithall so terrifyed and dismayed them that they trustinge to their Legges, leaue all their pray and cartage behinde them. Notwithstanding their was no great number of them slaine, because the Romanes (being with their long iournes weared) were not habile to folowe the chace farre, but they rescued and deliuered manie Prisoners whiche before had bene taken. From thence making his voyage into Syria, where hee sent out part of his Army to Melitena, he brought home from Chalep great Booties both of men and beastes, and toke Hierapolis in Syria by surrendre.

After this, the Emperour (lying at Hierapolis) hearing newes þe Turkes had banquished part of the Romane Armies, sped himselfe thitherward in all hast to succoure his distressed souldiours and afflicted subiectes. The Capitayne of Chalep, hearing of this overthrowe geuen to the Romanes, renounced his allegiance and fled with all his trayne to the Turkes. And when the Enemies had enuironed the Romane Campe round about, the Emperoure without geining any knowledge to them that hee would fight, brought ought his Armie and without the sounde either of Trumpet or other manifest token, gaue
the

Of the Saracen Historie. 95

the charge and onset vpon them, and put them to flight ere they had warning or time to resist. Then he buylte and erected a Castle at Hierapolis, and after he had taken many other Townes, he came to Alexandria a citie of Cilicia. And takinge order for the winteringe of his Host, where they shoulde not be pynched with famine nor scarcitie of victuall returned home to Constanti-nople.

In the beginning of þe next spring, þe Emperour making an other voyage to Cesarea, was certainly enformed þe a great company of Turkes foraged and spoyle that p̄uince: whom after he had either slayne or taken, hee toke his iournay to Euphrates: and there leauing parte of his Army, vnder the conduct of Philaretus, he himselfe went northward. The Turkes putting Philaretus his souldiours in great feare & leoperdie, got all their trinketes and cartage, and marching forthwarde into Cappadocia (wasting and making haucke as they went) came to Iconium, a Citie hit that time moste flourishinge and renowned.

The Emperoure hauinge intelligence hereof at Sebastia, spedde him thitherward. But hearing by the way, that his Enemies had destroyed and rased the Citie, and vpon the hute and report of his coming and appoche to be departed, he deliuered parte of the Romane Legions to Cachagurio Capitaine of Antioch, commaunding him forthwith to repaie to Mopsihestia, where the Turkes shoulde passe, and there to set vpon them. But ere they could come so farre, the Turkes were bidde to a colde breakfast by the Armenians in the plaine of Tharsus, and distressed in a manner of all they had: & hearing further that the Romanes were planted at Mopsihestia to receiue them, if they passed that way, fledde by night.

After this, in the beginning of the Spring, the Turkes oftentimes inuadinge and infestinge the Romane p̄uince
Ed es

The thirde Booke

ces, were daunted and overcome by Mychael Comnenus, Generall and Chieftaine for the Emperoure: and within awhile after, the same Michael bring sent by the Emperoure into Syria with a lesse power, for certayne spight and hartburning bozne agaynst hym, was vanquished and taken of the Turkes. After this the Emperoure in person with a great power went into the orientall Prouinces, and encamping at a place called Criapega, in a battayle whiche hee fought with his Enemies (wher the Scythians that were in his Army forsoke him and fled to the Turkes) most manfully fightinge was taken and brought befoze the Sultane whose name then was Axan, for Tangrolipix was now dead. This Axan as he was a most precise man and of great moderati-
Emperour taken Prisoner.
 on and prudence, when hee certainlye knew that it was the Emperour (for he would not beleue it was he, till the Ambassadors, (vnto him befoze sent,) affirmed, it was he) hee, and certayne Greeke Capitaines whiche hee had in Prison (being brought befoze him) set doo we and prostrated themselves at his feete) courteously lifted hym vp from the ground, lying prostrate and kneelinge at his feete, as the custome and manner is for them that acknowledge themselves vanquished: and so lowlye embraced him, as though he had bene his owne Brother, speakinge vnto hym these comfotable wordes solow-
Great curtesie of the Sultane.
 yng.

I would not wish you (moste noble Emperour) to lament and sorow for this your present chaunce and miserie. For such is the state and course of this worlde, that the fortune of Warre sometime alloteth victorie to one, sometime to another, humbleth one and aduanceth another. Your Maiestie hath moste puissantlye quitted your selfe in many notable Battayles, your valiaunt courage and inuincible prowesse in warlike affaires
 shall

Of the Saracen Historie. 96

shall euer be renowned and spoken of, yf you now shew your selfe to be no lesse patient and stoute in aduersitie then you were prudent and wise in prosperitie. Albeit at my handes you shall not be used as a Captiue and prisoner, but lyke an Emperour and as is most sitting for one of your estate.

And immediatly he appointed vnto him a most Princelye and rich Tabernacle, with seruantes to await and geue attendaunce vpon his Person, and all other furniture meete for an Emperour. And caused him to sit at his owne table next vnto himselfe, and for his sake set at libertie as many Prisoners as he would demaunde. Which Princelye curtesie argued that he had regarde to humane mutabilitie and sickle state, considering the same mischappe might as well haue happened vnto hym. Thus these two mighty Princes keping company familiarly together for certayne dayes, and talking most frendly one to another, at last established and concluded a perpetuall and infrangible peace for euer to continue betwene them, and vpon promise of affinitie by Mariage betwene their Children to be solemnised, hee franklie deliuered and frely dismissed Diogenes with a great traine of honorable Personages awaiting vpon him, and gaue vnto hym a riche sute of Princelye Apparaile.

But after that Diogenes was at Constantinople murdered by his owne People, Axan the Sultane bearinge thereof and greatlie lamentinge his death, for reuenge thereof sent out his Armies, not now to pylfer and robbe as befoze, but to subdue and utterly to reduce the same vnder his subiection. Against whom, Michael Ducas the Emperour, sent Isaac Comnenus with a great power, who was overcome and taken of the Turkes and payde a great Summe of Money for his Ransome. After this, Curleme Sepheiu to Tangrolipix (as befoze hath bene declared) leuyinge a great Power
 Do y to

The thirde Booke

Some the Citie of Hierusalem and some with much labour and effusion of bloude regained other Cities and there constituted a Chyistian Kingdome. Nowe, this while, the Emperour of Constantinople was in league with the other Sulcan of the Turkes, who was Lord of 8 Provinces conspyring and bozdering next vnto Constantinople: for woe shewed befoze, howe that those Provinces were allotted and geuen to Cuclume, the which by his Heires after him enioyed, and Tangrolipix his Successours had the regiment ouer the Persians and Babylonians: and in Egypt there were yet remayning the remnautes and residue of the Saracenes.

But after the death of Cuclume and his Sonne (Sultanes of the Occident and Lordes of all Cappadocia) one Tanismanye succeded. Of these Chyistian Capitaines when they were arryued in safetie in Asia, the Turkes gaue a great ouerthrowe vnto Raymund, watching him at a vantage, when he was entred into the Countrey about Nice vnadvisedly without searche, and hym compelled to flee vnto a pooze desert towne called Exorgum: where after he had bin a certain space besieged & thoroughly wearied, with a fewe others yeldeo to his enemies. The rest which would not yeide and submit themselves, after long Siege, were partly consumed in skirmishes and partly perished by famyne: and such as were taken alive, were slaine euerie one. So many as were lefte, departed first to Nicomedia, and from thence remooued to Nice a Citie of Bichynia. Whiche Citie while they fiercely assaulted, Tanismanye or Solyman with .lx. thousande Turkes, yssued out and bent his full force agaynst that part of the Chyistian Campe which was ledde by 8 Bysshoppe of Podic: but the French, stood so stoutly at the receipt, that the enemies were easely repulled, and so at length the Citie of Nice was taken. After this there was a sharpe bickering and conflict with Solyman, at the fourth

Of the Saracen Historie. 98

fourth Lent pitch from Nicæa. For he had gathered together the power of the whole Orient, and had procured as much aide from else where as he could. The Iconium a Citie standing by Mount Taurus, the Scate Royall and Metropolitane Citie of Solyman, (which at this day is called Cogni) and the Pallace of the Princes of Phrygia (now called Caramania) and Heraclea were wonne. Afterwarde Baldwyne diuiding his Armye into two partes tourned into Cilicia, and tooke Tharsus, Edessa and Manassa: the greater Hoste wyning Armenia, delquered the regiment and rule thereof to Palmurus an Armenian.

After this good successe, they tooke Cappadocia, Cæsarea Sororgia and Sura in the Straits of Mount Taurus. When they had passed the Mount Taurus, 8 Turkes aduanced themselves in a faire plaine, but they were easily and with litle adoe discomfited and put to flight by the Latines, and from thence marched straight to Antioch, a noble and strong Citie in Phœnicia, by which the riuer Orontes runneth (for there is another of the same name in Pamphilia, nere vnto Seleucia) and toke the same by surrendze, by reason that the Turkes were afore vanquished in battaile and yeldeo themselves. In which battaile were slaine of the Turkes a hundred thousand, and 15. M. Camelles taken.

During these boyles, the Venetian Fleete beyng sent to ayde the Latynes, wanne a Citie in the Coast of Ionia called Smyrna: and the Latines after they had taken Antioch, wanne Rugia and Albaria and there wintered.

In the Spring folowing, departyng thence, they layde Siege first to Tortosa and Tripolis. The king of Tripolis submitting himselfe was receiued vnder protection, but Tortosa was verie stoutly defended by the Inhabi.

The thirde Booke

Inhabitants. Wherefore rayling their Siege and passing ouer the Riuers of Zebul, Zabar and Brai, they came by pziue wayes and vnhaunted places befoze Berytus a Citie standing vpon the Sea coast, and from Berytus to Sagitta, and from thence the tenth day after, they came to Caesarea, after ward to Rama and so at length they pitched their Tentcs and planted their Siege befoze the noble Citie of Hierusalem, whiche with most cruell bloudshedding and incredible labour was wonne, about y yere of our redemption one thousand and one hundzeth, & Godfroy crowned King therof. He creates in this assault fwood full of congeled bloude y thickness of a fote. But the Turkes & Egypcijs leuping a fresh power, renewed warre. Against whom, Godfrey with his Chzistian army marched, and finding them encamped at Ascalon, gaue them battaile and slew of them 100000 (or as some say) 50000 and discomfited all the rest. But befoze that Hierusalem was taken, the Venecian Nauy coastinge alonge Lycia,, Pamphylla, Cilicia and Syria, lay at Roat in the Hauen of Ioppa, being then in the French Hoastes subjection, because thei might helpe the Chzistians with victual and necessary pzouision: & waighing vp their Ankers they departed thence, & toke Ascalon, Porphyria (a Citie nere to Ptolemais) Tyberias, Cities standing vpon the Sea side.

After the death of Godfroye who departed this lyfe within the Citie of Hierusalem, his Brother Baldwin was made King, and the rest of the Pzinces returned home. He through the aide and helpe of the Venetians, Genoways and Boemund King of Antioch toke Ptolemais, with Sydon and Berytus cities of Phœnicia. But when that Boemund was dead and Tancrede his Brother succeeded in the Crowne and Kingdome of Antioch, (the Turkes & Egypcijs againe invading the frontiers of the Ierosolymitane Kingdome, Balwine sente for Tancrede

Of the Saracen Historie. 99

Tancrede to come and ayde hym, and then gaue vnto them battayle, but the Turkes discomfited him and all his Hoast, wherebpon with great losse of his men heretyzed to Hierusalem and Tancrede to Antioch: and the Turkes got into their handes the possession of Mount Sinai. Within a while after Baldwine dyed, and in his steade an other Baldwine surnamed Burgenfis was made King.

After ward in the raigne and Empire of Alexius Emperour of Constantinople, because Baldwine the seconde, sent for ayde to the Latines to withstand the malignant enterpices of the Turkish Kakehelles, an other boyage was made into Syria. Therein went VVylliam duke of Aquitanye, Hugh the Great, Brother to Philip the French King, Stephen Earle of Chartiers lately returned home from y other expedition befoze Stephen earle of Burgundie, and Tholouse. The Venecians also sent thither a great Nauy. The Chzistian Champions and Latine Capitaines with their Hoast after many afflictions, labours and sharp stroymes sustayned by the miscreants, insomuche that they were almost dispeared and scattered, came at length to Hierusalem. But Baldwine inconsideratelie fightinge with the Turkes befoze the comming of the other chzistians, was taken pzisoner, his Host discomfited, and he himselfe brought to Carras, and after a time, payinge his Raunsome was deliuered and set at lybertie.

But the Venecian Nauy encounteringe with 700. Sayle that belonged to the Caliph of Egyp, whiche laye at the Siege of Ioppa, ouerraine them & toke the Citie of Tyre. During the time that they lay befoze that Citie geuing sundyle Batttries and assaultes there vnto, there was a Doue sene, flyinge ouer their Campe and Tentcs (so) the Venetians had set parte of their men on Hoze) caryng the Letters of the King of Damasco tyed

Ge

about

An other
boyage to
Ierusalem.

The thirde Booke

Polycie.

aboute her neck, the contentes wherof was, that he with a great power, would shortly come to rescue them. The Souldiours seeing her flying ouer their heades towards the Citie, at one instant all together, shouted and cryed, which shout so deuided & cut the Ayre, that the Dove fell downe to the ground. Then the Venetian Capitaynes perusing and reading ouer the letters, forged others, like vnto them in pzeopzition and wighting, but cleane contrary in effect and meaninge, the tenor wherof was, that the besieged parties should shift for their sauegarde as well as they coulde, and onely trust to themselves: for of him they could haue no ayde nor rescue. Whereupon they immediately surrendered themselves and their Citie to the Christians.

The first
beginninge
of the Assa-
sines.

At this time, there reigned among the Saracenes or Turks a certaine kind of Sect of men called Assassines; which killing whosoener they listed (lyke theues & Murtherers) wrought much skath and harme to the Christians in Syria. And hereof it came, that afterwarde among the Italians, al theues & murtherers were called by the name Assassines. Which Sect first sprong vp (as it is reported) in this sort. One Aloadine a Saracenist reigned in that parte of Persia, whiche lyeth nerte the Riner Indus, not farre from the borders of the Prouince of Arriana, vnder the Mount Caucasus (which Region at this day is called Mulehet. In the which in times past the Asacenes inhabited, of whom Arrianus speaketh in his hystorie of the Actes of Alexander the great, placing them betwene the riuers of Cophe and Indus: which Cophe (as I thinke) is that, whiche is called of Iosephus in his Iudaicall Antiquities Cuthus; & that into this Region those ten Tribes of Israel were translated.

This Aloadine hauing an intent to inueigle and perswade his people, that hee was hable to bringe all such to the

Of the Saracen Historie. 100

the fruition of a blessed lyfe, as obserued and kept his Lawes and commandements, had trimmed and planted in a right pleasant valley betwene two very high Hills moste goodlye Gardaines of solace, replennished with all kinde of fragraunt floures and beautiful Trees yielding smel & fruite most delectable. which gardains, were most finely contriued, and on euery side enuironed with notable gorgeous buildinges, garnished with Golde and other colours, and stozed with pzeious furniture and rich householde stufte of value inestimable. In diuers places of the same, were Fountaines and riuers of Milke, Honey, Wyne and sweet waters. Within the same, also were fine Damoselles and beautifull Vucelles, which with Melodies, Songes, muscalle Instrumentes, minding daunces, and all other allurementes of Feminine flatteries, delighted and fed the tender eares of such as were brought thither. Moreover there were other the Seruantes and housewifellie Trulles, which being kept close within dozes, dressed all thinges they could be deuised or thought necessarie aswel for meate & drinke as for the pleasure and delectation of the Ghestes and Strangers therein. All the place without was most curiously strengthened both by nature and arte. When this delightfull Gardaine of pleasure was fully ended and made perfect, Aloadine pzeached and pzoessed himselfe to those downish people to be the selow and Gate of Mahomet, and that he had power geuen vnto him, to dispose and bestow the benefitt and fruition of Paradise and blessed lyfe vpon such as should be to his lawes and hesses obeyssaunt. And of them he chose out certayne yong Stripelinges aboute the age of twelue or fouretene yeres, such as seemed to be of the best towardnesse and disposition for Marres in time to come, whome he brought vp in his Hall or Courte.

Cety

And

The thirde Booke

And because they should with the moze willing myndes obey his commaundementes and stirre at his becke, his fashion was with some cōfectioned Potion to bying them into a dead slepe: which done, his custome was then to transport & carpe them into y place of Cardaine: where being awaked, they solaced themselves and had the fruition of all kynd of pleasures for two or thre dayes space, and then agayne beyng with the same drinckes brought on slepe, (as befoze they had bene) were caried out, themselves knowing nothing at all thereof. And by this meanes it came to passe, that after ward they refused neither perils nor Daungers to fulfill his mynde and commaundementes, but were willing and ready to sea and kil whom he would commaunde, yea thonghe they dwelled in places distant farre of. And the number of them which he had there, were about ix. thousand. Wherby his power and his Successours after him (called Sexmountes) grew and in such sorte encreased, that he instituted the same order also in Syria, and had a Lieutenaunt vnder him at Damasco. For there was of them as it were a certaine order of knightes, whereof the chiefe President and Master was called Sexmount, and had diuerse officers of the order of this knighthode in sundry other places. The Castle wherein these Cardaines were, was named Tigad.

These Cutthroate Souldiours, with murders and robberies, made euery place in Asia dangerous and vnpassable to the Chyistians. But this Castle being afterward assaulted and besieged full seven yeres space by the Tartarians, was in the end by them taken, and they with in vnterly destroyed. This is the Historie of them, whom some by mistaking do call Essenes, and some Aracidas, as we haue found in the most credible and approued Authors.

After the death of Tanismany, the Occidentall Tur-

kische

Of the Saracen Historie. 101

kische Emperour began to be diuided. For one Muchumet succeeded Tanismany, betwene whom and Masute President of Iconium, was kindled certaine displeasure and private heartburning. But the Emperour Iohn Comnenus entred into league and linked in amitie with Masute, whose both powers ioyned together went agaynst Muchumet. At length for spight borne to the Emperour there was meanes found for a reconciliation and agreement betwene the two Turkische Potentates, Masute, and Muchumet: which being brought about and concluded, Masute abjured his former league and reuolued from the Emperour. notwithstanding, the Emperour raised two noble Cities of Pontus in the Turkes possession, the one called Castamon and the other Gangre. But within a while after, Muchumet recovered them again, and subdued Iberia also, with sundry places in Mesopotamia. And Masute wanne Iconium with other places in Syria. But making an enroade into Thracia, hee was talked wythball to bys coste, and put to flight by Manuel Comnenus. The Emperour glad about measure for this victorie, layde Siege to Iconium, but the Turkes set theyr Stales so couertly, and brake out of an Ambush so suddenly, that they discomfited his Host, and he himselfe escaped very hardly.

The Chyistians in Hierusalem beinge soze distressed by the Muscrauntes, there was a thyrd voyage and expedition made thither, whereof was chiefe Captayne and leader Conrade Duke of Franconia, who with a great Armie of Germanes, Italians and Frenchmen relieved the: and meeting wyth the Turkes (wyth whom the Greeques had also conspired) nere by the Ryuer Meander gaue vnto them Battayle. In which terrible confusie there was a merueylous greate slaughter of Turkes.

After that Masute was deade, his thre Sonnes parted

Ge. iij,

the

A thirde voyage toward the holy land.

The thirde Booke

the Kingdome among them, and afterward Iagupafanes and the Sultane of Iconium fell together by the eares for their moyties. In th'ende Iagupafanes got the victorie, and the Sultane fledde for succour to the Emperour, who caried him to Constantinople with him, for a Triumph. And heere by the waye, I may not omit to declare a pretie Jest of a Sarracene Icarus. This merle felow, attending vpon the Sultane, and bearing the countenance of a Juggeler, at a certaine solempne Iustes of Wyltrun-nyng, voluntarily went vp to the toppe of a Turret standyng in the Wyltyard at Constantinople, vnder y which Turret was the Wylte it selfe, where the Hozler tooke their races and courses, and aboue, were those foure courageous and pzaissing gilt Coursers which now stand on the toppe of the Church of S. Marke in Venice, directly opposite, a standyng ful but one against another. He standyng on the toppe of this Turret craked and bzagged that he would lye in the Ayze y space of a furlong. And hauing on, a large white garmet, down to his soles, ful of plaistes, knotted and gathered round to haue in the ayze withball, he stoode fluttering for winde with his handes in flectes of winges, and hauing (as he thought) sozed long ynough, at length committed his body to the curtesie of the wind, but falling do wpe headlong on the ground, hee bzuisid and bzake all his bones wyth the fall, and there lyke a baine Cockscombe yelved by the Ghost and dyed.

Nowe, Manuel to th'intent he would bee reputed and thought of the Sultane to be a Prince liberall, magnificent and mightie, dismissed and sent him away not wythout honourable rewarde, besyde a buyge Masse of money and other most pzeious Wares: vppon condition, that hee shoulde rebelluer and restoze vnto him the Citie of Sebastia, wyth the Suburbes of the same. But when the Sultane was returned to Iconium wyth his

Of the Saracen Historie. 102

hys money he returned to hys former boynite, spooyling Sebastia and all the places neere aboute it, and tooke vppon hym the chiefe Soueraigntie and pzehe- minence of all that Territozie: and bypuyng hys other bzother Dadune out of the Countrey, and getting by force the Citie of Cæsarea, he went about also to supplant and ouerthrow Iagupasan.

Dadune got into hys possession the Countrey of Amasia beeyng wythout any possessor: but it was not long ere he was agayne expelled and bypuen oute by Clizastlan the Sultane, who boze all the waye in Cap- padocia. This Clizastlan albeit he called the Empe- rour, father: yet he euer inroched vppon his Wzou- uinces and spoyled hys Countreyes. Wherevppon, within a whyle after, a newe garboyle and hatred was kindled betweene them: for that the Sultane likewise charged the Emperour with bzache of promyse, in sundrye Articles and couenauntes befoze condiscended vnto.

The Emperour purposing with all hys myght to be auenged of his Aduersaries, and alreadye concey- uing in his mynde the destruction and bitter subuer- tion of the Turkishe Nation, leuyed together al his olde beaten Souldiours, mustered newe Legions, and procu- red all the forayne ayde that hee coulde from any place, made a firme League with Baldwine King of Hierusa- lem, and retained in wages the Seythians consynging vpon the Ryuer Ister, and thus hauing a mightie and popu- lous Army, wyth all thinges in god ozer and readines decently purueighed, (after he had made hys prayers to Almighty God the geuer of all victoize for his diuine assistance) marched swyth in good ozer against them: His iourney lay thzough Phrigia and Laodicea Cho- nas S. Archangel, Lampis and Celenas where the head Spring of the great Meanderis, into whiche the Riuer Marfyas

One y toke
vpon hym to
lie in the
ayze.

What trust
is in y pzo-
mise of a
Turke.

A good
Childe.

The thirde Booke

rather then aduisedlie, chopped hardilye into the same streits hauing his battel apointed in this order folowing. The Toward was led by the two Sons of Angelus Constantine whose names were Iohn and Andronicus, with Macroduca Constantine and Lapardus Andronicus, with their Ensignes and Bards, and was marshaled in Lunare ranks or Honed arape. The right wings was led by Baldwine King of Hierusalem, and the lesse by Maurozomes Theodorus. After them folowed the Judges, Skullions, Woodcarriers, Cartes and all the other baggage and Trinketrie of the Hoast. After them came the Emperoure himselfe with the maine Battaille, where in was a valgaunt Crew of chosen felloies. The Heretwarde was conducted by Andronicus Contostephanus.

Asone as they were entred within the Streights, where there was no starting hoales nor yet elbowrome for the Hoast, and the Bannes of Angelus Macroduca, and Lapard ordering themselues into a thre square battaille, (small befoze and thik behinde like vnto a wedge) gaue the charge vpon the barbarous Turkes and by fine force draue them backe from the Hilles and higher places where they fought, into the Mountaines, and so perforce, made for themselues a throug passage without any hurt or daunger. But the residue of the Legions, folowed after them nothing couragiouslie: neither did they let their Archers in the flanks of their Battaille to gall and keepe of the Turkish force as they should haue done, neither held they their Targetts close together ouer their heades like a vault, to beare of their shotte and blowes. Wherefore the Turkes in thik plumps and with great violence brake out on euery side vpon them from the higher places into the lower ground and from the bankes where befoze they fought, into the plaine, and boldly encroched

Of the Saracen Historie. 104

croched, still moze and moze vpon the Romanes till they had pearced and broken their arape. And firste puttinge Baldwine his winge to flight, wounded and slew many. Which when Baldwine perceued, with an intent to rescue and ayde his men in that distresse, taking with hym a picked Troupe of expert Horsemen, rushed in amonge the thickest of his Enemies. Of whom he was so beset and on euery side circumuented that hee himselfe was there slaine, and all his men most valgauntlye fightyng, likewise there dyed. This good successe set the Turkes on such a glorious hoigh, that they stopped all the wayes where the Romanes should passe, meaning that day to plague the Chyistians, that they should neuer after be hable to attempt the lyke enterpryse against them: for now being enclosed in those perillous Streights, and one hindring an other, they wer not hable to endamage nor hurt their Enemies by any kinde of meanes, but rather bindyed and disturbed one an other, and were cause of one an others slaughter and lamentable destruction. So extremely coped in and pounded were they, that they neither could haue any help of the Emperoure neither yet of the Heretwarde, neyther coulde they goe backe or decline on any syde, because the Cartes and carriage that were placed in the middle like a Bulwarke or Kampire, letted them. Their Horses and men were killed lyke sheepe, and with Turkes Falchions gozed and forned throug. The Wallages laye full of dead Coytes, the wayes stencched with grisly sightes of slaine persons, the Downes couered ouer with dismembred bodies, the waters of the Riuers were coloured and ranne with bloude of Men and Beastes mingled together: and to be shoyte, such lachrymable slaughter was in this place made vpon the poore Chyistians, that the wofulnesse thereof cannot with Penne accozdinglye be expressed.

ff y

And

Lamentable slaughter of Chyistians by negligence.

The thirde Booke

And beside all other outrages and unspeakable calamities, the Turkes pitched the head of Andronicus Bataza the Emperours nephew, which had leuied an Army out of Paphlagonia and Heraclea Pontica and was sent against the Amasene Turkes in Amasia) vpon a Speare point, and caried it befoze them for a mockage in derision. Which heauie spectacle and dangerous plight so vexed and inwardly graued Manuel, that his minde was wonderfully perplexed, insomuch that he was euē at his wittes ende and wist not what to doe nor which waye to tourne him.

But the Romane Legions in the Toward, (as befoze was declared) hauing passed those pykes & deadly trappes helde themselves close together and for their sauēgarde fenced in their Campe, vpon the toppe of a little Hill very conuenient and commodious (as the time then fell out) for their purpose. The Turkes with might and maine strued to ouerrunne and beare downe the Emperours battaile, because if they mighte once thzoughly disperse and suboue the greatest and strongest part of the Army, they thought the residue would easely and with small adoe be vanquished, like as a Serpent when the head is bzuyled and crushed to powder, all the other partes of the bodye (which befoze by themselves moued, being cleane cut of) do straightwayes die. The Emperour fought valiantly that day and oftentimes assailed the Turkes fiercely to dye them out of the Straights and to open the waye for his men to passe thzough, but perceiuing the power and force of the Turkes (which fought frō the higher ground) still to encrease, and making his full account, that whether he taried or went forwarde, there was none other way for him and his company but present death, he exhorted his men first of all to repose all their hope in Almighty God and next in their weapons and handes, and that they should either saue their lynes by hardy blowes and

Of the Saracen Historie. 105

and valiant deeds or else by honest and glorious death wyne to themselves perpetuall fame and renoume: for he plainly tolde them that he saw none other way for the to escape cleare and harmelesse, but by such a famous adventure. And y God would not utterly forsake nor leave succourlesse them that beare armour and fight in the quarrel of his holy Catholique Religion, for y aduancement of his glorious name, against the impious contemners and blasphemers of all religion, godlines, vertue and honesty, so that they would prostrate themselves befoze hym and with deuoute mindes (crauing his diuine assistance) valiantly vse y courage and power which his diuine Presence gaue, & inspired into their stomaches. And although their chaunce were then to be slaine, yet should they (hauing a most iust cause and quarell) for this their short and transitozle life, gaine and winne a double life: y one, euē lasting and most blessed in the heavenly kingdome, promised and prepared by our Lord and Sauour Christ for all such true Christians as sincerely worship and vnfeignedly beleue on his name, but namely and specially for such as spend their bloude and life for the loue of his holy word and setting forth of his glozzy. And y other is, a perpetuall fame and a woorthye memoziell in this woorld among all posteritie, which would most assuredly for euē extoll & celebrate this their prowesse and constancy. But such as thzeu away their weapons, should for euē be ill reported of and reuiled in the mouthes and speeches of all men, as fugitiues, forsakers, & Traitors, of their Liege Emperour & as villaines vnthankfull & vnmindfull of God his benefites, and which is moze, should by God his own mouth be accurst and adindged to endlesse paines & sempiternal tortures. Wherefoze he aduised the to plucke by their heartes, and by his example, every one to make for himself a way & passage with his sword. Whē he had finished these his speeches with those few that he had left,

¶ f. iij.

he

The thirde Booke

Valiant-
nes of the
Emperour.

he made streyght into the middelt of his enemies, and after many woundes genen and taken on either side, breaking thzough the Turkes araie, and being so flased and betwen in all his body that thirtie Arrowes oz therabout, stacke fast in his Target, and not able to take vp his owne Bassenet oz headpæce that was stroken of, yet (maugre their heades) hee escaped and went thzough the thickest crowde of them. The other Legions were on euery side flaine and bzought to their bane, and troden down one of another. Such as escaped alyue and were passed these perillous Streites in safetie, were neuerthelesse slayne and quelled by their enemies in the other ballay, beyond. For the passage in that place was diuided into .xij. deepe ballages nære one to another: and begyn at the first entrance somewhat bzoad and rounge, was (the further a mā went in) strecter and narrower. All which places the Turkes had fortifed & planted with their Ambushmentes and garrisons. Moreover, there sodainely arose such a terrible gale of blusterous and tempestuous windes, which tossed & raised by such habundance of sand (whereof those places are full) the both the Armies most fiercely claspyn together, bickered in the darke, as though it had bene at midnight, and killed all such as came in their reach without any respect whether they were friendes oz foes. And in y same place, (were they Turkes oz Romanes, hozses oz other cattel) it skilled not, for they dyed in heapes together one with another. And y valley where this cōflicte was, seemed to bee nothing else but a common & a large Sepulchze oz buriall place for them all.

But yet at this time, there died moe of the Romanes than of the Turkes, & specially of the nobler sort & such as were the Emperours nære Cosens & kinsmen. And many being there left halfe aliue, lay so buried & conered ouer w heapes of dead Carcasses y they were not hable by any meanes by strugling to get themselues out: neither was there

Of the Saracen Historie. 106

there any at hand to help them, for euery one had ynough adoe to labour & sweate for his owne life and saluetie. In this ougly sort, they long languishing in that kind of horrible & lothsome torment, wer in the end enforced there to geue by the Ghost by a death most stinking, lothsome and lamentable. The Emperour himself panting and out of breath, was got al alone vnder a wilde Deare tree to take aire & recouer his faint powers, hauing with him neither Page, Henymā, yeman of his Ward nor keeper. Whom a poze cōmon Souldiour oz hozsemā of his owne troupe (being likewise thither escaped out of the battaile) finding in such miserable plight, breathlesse and comfortlesse, dutifully pitied and bewailed: and offering in y his calamitie, to minister vnto his Maiestie the best seruice that hee was able, raught him by his Helmet & buckeled on his other Armour y lay here and there dangling about him. Which while he was in doing, a certayne Turke ranne hastily vnto him, & seeing no man there to defend nor rescue him, toke the Emperours hozse by the bzible, meaning likewise to haue carted away the Emperour himself as prisoner. Whom the Emperour with a pæce of his broken Speare y he had yet left, so blessed and bumbasted about the pate, y he laid him there on the ground to sleape. Then ranne the other Turkes fiercely vpon him, to haue taken him aliue. Which he seeing, toke the same hozsemans Speare of who befoze we spake, and w the same run one of his enemies cleane thzough: while y said Souldiour w his naked sword, dubbed another of the hozter by the head, and so repulded & kept the of, at the swordes point, till tenne other of the Roman souldiours came running to assist them. Then was he very desirous to haue ioynded himselfe to the other Legions, and most cozagiously gaue the aduerture thzough his enemies: but the heapes of dead Carcasses as of Turkes encountering w him in euery corner as he went, much hindered and preiudiced his presence.

As freend as
neede.

But

The thirde Booke

Horse in suche a pace as hee was hable. Him had fifty Turkes espied, and on ech side enclosed to haue taken, but he no moze stirred nor amended his pace for them, then if no man at all had pursued him. When they were clustered about him, he drew his sword, and sliced one of them so cleane in the middle, from the head downe to his backe, together with the Sable of the Horse also, that the residue for feare to be serued with the same saue kept a loose and durst not meddle. And after that this Frederick was drowned in a river, the Germanes returned home agayne.

Frederick
drowned.

About this time there sprong by great disoord and sedition among the Turkes. For Clizastlan the mightie Sultan of Iconium, when he dyed, left foure Sonnes behind him, Masute, Coppatine, Rucratine and Chaichosroes. Vnto Masute he bequeathed the principalltie of Amasia, Ancira, Dorylaeum and certaine other cities of Pontus. Vnto Coppatine, hee gave Melitene, Cæsarea and the Colonie nowe called Taxara. Vnto Rucratine, hee allotted Amisa, Docca and the other Cities vpon the sea Coastes. Chaichosroes possessed Iconium, the regall seat of the Sultans, and with it Lycaonia and Pamphylia and all as far as Cottyanium. Coppatine being dead, Rucratine and Masute fell together by the eares and stroue for his Segniorie and enheritance. But Rucratine for that he was a witty and skilfull man in martiall affaires, got the victorie and wyped Masute his nose cleane from all & principalltie of Coppatine their late Brother. And being now all in his iolytie and ruffe for this his good successe & victorie, & hauing a moneths mind to catch into his hands Iconium also, denounced open warre and sent his defiance vnto his Brother Chaichosroes whose Mother was a Christian, vnlesse he would resigne his Crowne & geue place vnto him ouer all his Soueraigntie. Whereupon Chaichosroes fled for his refuge and ayd to the emperour

Of the Saracen Historie. 108

perour Alexius Angelus as his father had done befoze him, albeit not with so good fortune and spæde as his father, for hee was sent home agayne thence without his purpose. He was scantly come to Iconium, but hee was expelled by Rucratine and driuen to sie to Lebune king of Armenia: of whom he was frendlie receiued and courteously entertayned: but as for relæse and ayde he gotte none, wherefoze hee returned to Constantinople and there in pooze estate passed out the rest of his dayes.

During the Emperour of this Alexius Angelus, the Venetians toke Constantinople and Angelus being thence dishonored, the Greekes in Asia created Theodorus Lascaris his Sonne in Law, Emperour, who had vnder his Empire and obedience not onely Bythinia and the Regions along the Sea, but also extended the Lymittes of his Dominions very farre into the maine Lande, and had vnder him all from Caria and the riuer Meander Southwarde, to the Sea Galaticum and Cappadocia Northward, and constituted his Imperiall Seate at Nice. Which so tickled and fretted Alexius, that he passing the Sea Egæum entred into Asia, and praiuely went to Iachine the Sonne of Rucratine (being now Sultane) in pittifull plight & poze rayment: befoze who he in suppliant wordes opened his state & fortune, & humbly besought him of aide & succor to restore him to his lawfull Emperour and Crowne, vnjustly by an vsurper detained & withholden: not forgetting to put him in remembrance of the former frendship which afoze time he had shewed & borne to him while he was in prosperitie, and further promised hym great Summes of money. Insomuch that Iachine taking compassion vpon him and moued greatly with his large promises, forthwith dispatched Ambassadors to Theodorus, threatening warre and destruction vnto him, vnlesse he gaue place to his father in law & suffered him quietly to enioy his rightfull Diademe and Imperiall authoritie.

Emperours
deposed by
his Sonne
in law.

Ep. ii.

After

The thirde Booke

them out of that poore plot and beggerly region, which affronteth Persia and the Caspia Sea (almost Islandwise) and is enuironed on eche side with the Scythian Ocean, and ioyneth vnto Asia by one onely Isthmus or narrow portion of land lying betwene the two Seas, the which is compassed and enclosed with the highe and inaccessible Mountaines called Riphæi as it were with a Wall or Rampier: the waues of the Sea (sayeth Hayton the Armenian) going backe, and making way for them to passe betwene the Mountaines and the Sea. And therfore all those Scythians afterwarde, of y^e Tribe wherof their first Emperour was descended, were called Tartarians: whose auncient descent and beginning many (as befoze we haue sayde of the Turkes) doe referre vnto the tenne Tribes of Israell, whose opinion I doe not see howe it standeth with reason nor whereupon it is grounded. This am I perswaded and this seemeth vnto me most like and probable, that the Scythians be descended of Magog the sonne of Iapetus, of whom the Scripture in many places maketh mention: and that those tenne Tribes were by the King of Persia translated not into Scythia but into Media. But howsoever the matter goeth, the Tartarians in such sort as we haue declared, passing and in great companies departing from the Hyperboreans vnder the conduct of Cangio, (whom for honours sake they called Cham, which is as muche to say as a most high and Sovereaign Emperour) toke their way downe along to the Sea Caspium.

In the meane season, Cangio the Cham departing this lyfe, his Sonne Hoccota succeeded in his place, a man ryght wyse and valiaunt, and the eldest of twelue brothers. He sending out Gebesabada with a hyge power to subdue and conquere the regions of the Occident, and himselfe in person passing the Caspian Streites, Sogdiana,

Of the Saracen Historie. 110

Sogdiana, Bactrian, Oxo and the ryuer Sogdus (whiche is encreased wyth many and the same great Springes flowing and running into it) wyntered at the foote of Mount Taurus, solacing himselfe and enioying the fruitfulness of that region and suche boote as he had before taken. This Mount Taurus is the greatest Mountaine in all the world, whose ridge & top hanging still together without any partition, hath his beginning Westward nere the Sea Agzum and stretching a long to the Ocean Orientall, diuideth all Asia into two parts. This Hill is also called Caucasus. The next Spring when the ground was new clothed & decked with the fresh attyre of greene grasse & pleasant floures, they discamped from y^e foote of Caucasus, & like an innumerable sort of sheepe, mounted to the toppe of the Mountaines, inuading the Countreies vnderneath them: and after they had there, made great pillage and taken their pleasure, they pearced into India, all about the Bankes of the noble ryuer Indus on either side: constituting the Ocean, for the limittes of their Emppye. And there building a Princely Citie called Cambalu most beautifull sumptuous and large, and for all pleasure of man the most delectable and pleasauntest Citie in all Asia, appointed it to be their chiefe Pallace and Seate Royall. Afterwarde, exployting his warres by Deputies and Lieutenantes whom he made Chieftaines and Generalles ouer his Armyes, choosing thereto such as were eyther his brothers or else of the bloude Royall: some of them went Northwarde, some Westwarde, and some Southwarde: and after they had subdued the Arachosians Caramanians & sundry other Nations, wonne Persia and thence expelled the Turkes: they then came to the Chaldees and Arabians. From thence they marched agaynst the Babylonians, and Assyrians and conquering Mesopotamia, brought vnder their subjection the Persians, Parthians and Medians.

Cambalu a
noble citie
of India.

After

The thirde Booke

After this, going by by the greater Armenia, wth incredible celeritie they overcame Colchis northward, and Iberia that confineth hard upon it, insomuch that their state surmounted, and flourished in fame and hono^r exceedinglye. Now, this mightie Tartarian Prince was purposed to make the Sea on every side the limits and bounds of his Empire, but the pleasaunt delicacies and amiable fople of the Countrey of India, so mollified and effeminated his mind, that beinge loath to departe thence, he settled & staid there, and distributed the Provinces, Cities, Houses, fat Farms and Tenements amonge his soldiers and people, and receiued the Rites, Ceremonies and Customes of the Assyrians, Persians and Chaldees.

Wherefoze as soone as these Tartarians hauinge passed the Caspian Mountaines, had sodainly and forcible surprised Alexandria, a citie standing nere p^r streights now

of Israell, whose opinion I doe not see howe it standeth with reason noz whereupon it is grounded. This am I perswaded and this seemeth vnto me most like and probable, that the Scythians be descended of Magog the sonne of Iapetus, of whom the Scripture in many places maketh mention: and that those tenne Tribes were by the King of Persia translated not into Scythia but into India. But howsoever the matter goeth, the Tartarians in such sort as we haue declared, passing and in great companies departing from the Hyperboreans vnder the conduct of Cangio, (whom for honours sake they called Cham, which is as much to say as a most high and Sovereigne Emperour) toke their way downe along to the Sea Caspium.

In the meane season, Cangio the Cham departing this lyfe, his Sonne Hoccota succeeded in his place, a man right wyse and valiaunt, and the eldest of twelue brothers. He sending out Gebesabada with a hygge power to subdue and conquere the regions of the Occident, and himselfe in person passing the Caspian Streites, Sogdiana,

Of the Saracen Historie. III

(as needes must) that great dearth and scarcitie was in all the countrey, and their Treasuries also with the charges and costes of so long continuance were in maner emptied and cleane exhausted.

Wherefoze beinge now by this newe attonement and League ridde out of the same and brought to quietnesse, he bent his whole minde an other while to the seats of peace, the sweet Pource and Storehouse of plentifulnesse and aboundaunce. And because he would by his example prouoke and stirre by the rest of his subiectes to doe semblable, (like a good Householder & one fit to be a Prince amonge people) undertooke to procure & cause so much of the husbanded ground as was neither fit to beare cozne noz good to plant vines, to be touned by and tyllid: and manured so much thereof, as he thought woulde be sufficient for the expences of his owne Table, & for the maintenance of all them whom of his mere liberallitie and bounty he had retained and taken into his

Countreys vnderneath them: and after they had there, made great pillage and taken their pleasure, they pearced into India, all about the Bankes of the noble ryuer Indus on either side: constituting the Ocean, for the limittes of their Emperie. And there building a Princely Citie called Cambalu most beautifull summmons and large, and for all pleasure of man the most delectable and pleasauntest Citie in all Asia, appointed it to be their chiefe Palace and Seate Royall. Afterward, exployting his warres by Deputies and Lieutenantes whom he made Chieftaines and Generalles ouer his Armyes, choosing thereto such as were eyther his brothers or else of the bloude Royall: some of them went northwarde, some Westwarde, and some Southwarde: and after they had subdued the Arachosians Caramanians & sundry other Nations, twonne Persia and thence expelled the Turkes: they then came to the Chaldees and Arabians. From thence they marched agaynst the Babylonians, and Assyrians and conquering Mesopotamia, brought vnder their subjection the Persians, Parthians and Medians.

After

Peace
brought
plentie.

Cambalu a
noble citie
of India.

The thirde Booke

After this, going by by the greater Armenia, wth incredible celeritie they ouercame Colchis northward, and Iberia that confineth hard vpon it, insomuch that their state surmounted, and flourished in fame and hono^r exceedinglye. Now, this mightie Tartarian Prince was purposed to make the Sea on every side the limits and bounds of his Empire, but the pleasaunt delicacies and amiable soyle of the Countrey of India, so mollified and effeminated his mind, that beinge loath to departe thence, he settled & staid there, and distributed the Provinces, Cities, Houses, fat Farmes and Tenements amonge his soldiers and people, and receiued the Rites, Ceremonies and Customes of the Assyrians, Persians and Chaldees.

Wherefore as soone as these Tartarians hauinge passed the Caspian Mountaines, had sobainly and forcible surprised Alexandria, a citie standing nere the Straits now called the P^{er}son Gates: the Imperiall Sultane of the Turkes greatly terrified and dismayd with this sodayne irruption of a new and most fierce people and fearing lest if he should be dzien and enforced to enter into Warres with the Tartarians, his olde Enemies the Romanes would be readie to set on him behind at his backe, sent his Ambassadors with full authoritie and commission to the Emperour, to confirme and strike an vnitie and peace betwene them: which thing the Emperoure as beinge encumbred with European Warres) was very glad of, and willingly therevnto condescended, because the Turkes should be as a strong Rampier and Wall in Asia for him, against the inuasion of the Tartarians. This League therfore with the Turkes was of al handes gladly embraced, and to the Greekish Empire most conductible. For whereas men (being so long time afflicted wth the lamentable calamities of long Warres) had neither occupied tillage, no^r bred by Cattayle, it fell out in the end

(as

Of the Saracen Historie. III

(as needs must) that great dearth and scarcitie was in all the countrey, and their Treasuries also with the charges and costes of so long continuance were in maner emptied and cleane exhausted.

Wherefore beinge now by this newe attonement and League ridde out of the same and brought to quietnesse, he bent his whole minde an other while to the seats of peace, the sweet pource and storehouse of plentifulnesse and aboundaunce. And because he would by his example prouoke and stirre by the rest of his subiectes to doe semblable, he (like a good Householder & one fit to be a Prince among people) undertooke to procure & cause so much of the vnhusbanded ground as was neither fit to beare corne no^r good to plant Vines, to be tounred by and tyllid: and manured so much thereof, as he thought would be sufficient for the expences of his owne Table, & for the maintenance of all them whom of his mere liberalitie and bountifull goodnesse he had retayned and taken into his charge to keepe and seecherished, that is to witt, the poore, diseased, & impotent people, vnto whom he assigned houses and Hospitales, and appointed also certaine Granaters and ouerscers such as were trained by & had the skill of Tillage and Vine planting. Which officers layd by yeerely in his Storehouses and Graners great prouision and store of the ouerplus of the corne. He also had abundantly stored himselfe with Oren, Rhyne, Hozes, Sheep Swine and with diuers kindes of tame Byrdes, by whom he yeerely receiued great increafe and profyte. This not onely did he himselfe, but also by his example, occasioned others of the Princes and Nobility, his Cousins and Allies to doe the lyke, so that enery one, hauinge of his owne competentlie whercon to liue, the Communitie should not be oppressed, no^r the inferiour sort by force and extortion of the richer impouerished, wth any intolerable Tributes, Assesments and Payments.

136

137

The good example of the Prince doth much good in a Realme.

The thirde Booke

By this means, the Romane weale publique was scot-
red and cleane purged from all notable exactions, and by-
bing pyllages insonmuch that within fewe yeres space, e-
uerie man had his Barnes and Cellers full stoed and
stuffed with Cozne and Wine: and such encrease of cattel
Hens and other homish Foules, that the high waies and
Streets, Stables and Sheepe cotes, Houses and Gardens
were vneth hable to holde them.

A blessed
plentie of al
things caus-
ed through
peace and
good go-
uerment.

This golden state and blessed felicitie was hereby al-
so the moze augmented, for that the Turkes were with-
in themselves merueillouslie pinched and afflicted with
great hunger, dearth and penurie of Cozne, whereby it
came to passe, that all their Golde, Syluer, Iuelles and
precious Wares through this godlye foxcalte and diuine
wisdomme of the Emperour, came into the hands and pos-
session of the Romanes, for then might a man haue seene
them faine to choppe and chaunge their rich Wares for a
little bread Cozne, to sustaine themselves withall: and e-
uery Byrde, Dre, Cow or Kidde was solde at an exor-
bitant price. All the wayes were pestered full of Turkysh
Women and Childzen of the Turkysh Nation cominge
to and going from the Romane Provinces.

A Crowne
Imperiall
for the Em-
peresse bought
with the
money that
was had of
the Turkes
for Eggs
in the time
of dearth.

The Emperesse also of the ouerplus of Venues egges
(for they were not possible to be all spent in her house and
Famylie) at that time solde at a very high price daylye to
the Turkes, had got together in short space such an incre-
dible Masse of Poney as was suffycient to pay for a most
rich Crowne of Coude set full of orient Pearles and
precious Stones, whiche for that cause the Emperours
called and feared Quata, because it was bought with
Egge Poney: so in short time the Emperour enriched
himself and all his Subiectes with Wealth exceedinglie.

During this while, the Tartarians, under the leadinge
of their Capitaine Baydo, marching and making impres-
sions into the frontiers of the Turkysh countreys, the
Sultan

Of the Saracen Historie. 112

Sulcan of Iconium, leuying as great a power as hee was
able of all Nations (for he had then with him of Greekes
and Latines, that is to wit, of Italians, Germanes and
Frenchmen, two Cohortes or Bands.ouer the Gre-
kish band was Capitaine one John Liuinada a Cyprian
bozne (or as some say, one Paleologus) who earst had re-
sistled from the Emperours: and ouer the Latines was
Boniface Moline one of the nobilitie of Venice) euerie
man being bzaue in apparell & well appointed wth Venons
and flagges of their owne Armes. With these courageous
personages, marching against the Tartarians, he met wth
them in a place nere to the Citie Arscor in the great Ar-
menia called Cosdrach. The Tartarians so sone as the es-
pied this straung Army apparailled contrarie to the guise
and fashion of that countrey, supposing some greater ayd
and succour had bene sent vnto them, were merueillouslie
dismayd & astonied, and if one of y^e Sulcane his kinsmen,
for an olde gruge, had not in the beginning of the battails
fled vnto their side wth a great crew of pertakers, they wold
haue tourned their backs and fled, But the occasion there-
of was the cause at that time of the Turkes rayne and o-
uerthrow, & afterward almost brought al their kingdom
& principalltie in subiection to y^e Tartarians. For y^e Tar-
tarians obtaining the upperhand & victorie in this conflict,
neglected not the oportunitie & godd chaunce that Fortune
now offered them, but passed y^e riuer Euphrates and sub-
dued Syria as far as Palestina & Arabia. After after they
had assessed yearly tributes vpon y^e remnaunts of y^e Syri-
ans, Arabians, & Phaznicians, they labed themselves wth
many rich booties & spoiles, & returned againe into y^e o-
rient. But the next yere folowing, they passing Euphrates
againe tooke their way Northwarde into Cappadocia,
& went as far as the riuer Thermoodon: and taking I-
conium the chiefe Citie that belenged to the Turkes,
Azatine the Sulcane beyng banished with his Mother
Melceke

The thirde Booke

Melecke fled for succour to the Emperour Michael Palaeologus, whom not long before (in like case and respect fleeing unto him for comforte and aide) he had pleased honozably and entertained with all pointes of princely curtesie. And putting him in remembrance of his former friendship shewed unto him in his neede & distresse, and unfolding before him the pitifull plight of this his present state and calamitie, instantly requested him, either to ayde him against his Capitall foes the Tartarians, or else to assigne him some pece of ground or odde corner (as it were a colonie) where he & his people might repose themselves in some more ease and securitie: for he had brought with him his Wives and Childzen and many Seruantes, with much wealth and Richesse. The Emperour, for that he was on euery side encompassed and wrapped in Warres, would in no wise diminish any part of his own power, and as for the assignement of any part of his Countrey, to such a great Potentate as had bene a mightie Monarch and Prince over many Provinces, and also from his tender age euer brought up in princely pompe and stately preheminance, he iudged a thing very dangerous. For he considered, and wisely imagined that the Lordes and nobilitie which were vnder his rule and authoritie, would seeke their Lordes and Maister where euer he should be, and that his people being scattered and dispersed in diuers places, like the wandering Planetes in the night, would flocke together and concurre to him that goeth before them with a Linke and leade the way. So would they come running to the King, and so perchance in the ende, worke vnto the Romanes some myckle wo and disturbaunce. And therefore looding him out with faire wordes and noseking hym in good hope, he kept him at a doubtfull state, without geuing any resolute answer to his requestes. Azatine, for that his Parentes were Christians and he himselfe also

Pollice in
Princes.

Of the Saracen Historie. 113

also Christened & washed in the Sacramēt of holy Baptisme in his infancie, resorted daily with the Emperour to Sermons and hard & holy Scriptures, daily practised and remained so long with the Emperour, till at length by the meanes & helpe of the Europa Scythians, he made an escape and fled with his Sun Melecke out of his towne Aenun and passed the ruer Ister and within a while after dyed, and Melecke by Sea passed into Asia to the Tartarians, and of them obtained the Kingdome of the Turkish Nation, as his fathers enheritance. But a certayne Duke named Amuric with a Warlike power him encountered and ouerthrew, so that he was faine to flee vnto Heraclea, a Citie of Pontus: and win a while after again returning to his native Cuntry & recovering his fathers kingdome, win shortly space was trayterously murdered.

Thus was the Turkeish Empire subuerted and brought to small rughe, and from a State of well ordered discipline and magnificence, fell to utter decay and extreeme confusion: the cause whereof was, for that, not onely the Nobilitie and higher Powers dyuided the Kingdome into many sections and partes, but many also of baser degree and obscurer Parentage, associating vnto them the rascall Peasauntes and bulgar sort) practised pylfering and robbrie, carrying nothing with the but their Bowe and Quiver of Arrowes: and taking by their Rowst in the Streites of the Mountaines, made many roades into the Countreys about, and the Cities belonging to the Romane Empire. For it happened a little before, that the garrisons defending the Castles & fortresses of the Emperour, for want of payment of their fees, & yearly stipendes at the Emperours handes, would serue no longer but departed thence, whych being at the first (as a thing of small waight and moment) neglected, was in the ende the cause, that the Romane Emperour sustained and incurred most greuous daungers and calamities. For

When

The thirde Booke

when the Turkes were displaced and expelled by the Tarrarians, they displaced and expelled the Greekes, and loke howe weake they were in comparison of the Tarrarians, so stronge were they against the Greekes: in so much that at length the matter was decided with open warre and dent of sword. For the Emperour understanding that a great power of Turkes were by in Paphlagonia, leuyed a very competent Armye, to represse and (as much as might be) to inhibite their violent insolence, least if they shoulde bee still suffered impunely to raunge & spoyle without resistance, it might byee further daunger and inconuenience. And therfore when hee had assembled his power together, he sent the same being wel appointed against them, who encountering the Turkes, had of them the victorie. But whilest they disorderly and ouersarre in chase beyond the ryuer pursued them, they fell into the bandes of an Ambush which the Turkes by night before had there layd for them. By meanes wherof they being on th'one side beset with an Host of fresh Souldiours well appointed in battle aray, and on th'other side pent in and enclosed with the ryuer, they were slaine almost euery man. The Turkes triumphing for this successe and victorie, enroaded afterward within the Roman Territoies, and came as farre as the ryuer Sangarius, and subjugated vnder their obesaunce, all from the Pontique Sea and Galatia to the Sea Lycium and Carium and the ryuer Eurymedon.

Mamelukes.

At this time also, the Mamelukes (which word by interpretation signifieth Seruauntes or Slaues) obtained the Kingdome in Egypt, and aduanced the limittes of theyr Emppye into Africka & Lybia as farre as Gades and subdued Phœnicia and Syria and all the Countrey loynning vpon the Sea coastes.

Nowe, how this came to passe, we will declare. The Caliphes

Of the Saracen Historie. 114.

Caliphes and all the Saracenes, lulled in ease and noled in effeminate nycenesse, (engendred by the delicious and tender allurements of that pleasaunt Clime and region) became so slouthfull, that althoughe they possessed a most wealthy and fertile kingdome, yet were they easie to bee vanquished and subdued by any: and the Caliphes being all geuen to lust, Sensualitie and pleasures, tooke no care to any thing, neyther attempted any enterpryses themselves, but executed and administred all their Affaires by a Vicegerente which was called an Amyrall. Therfore when as Baldwine King of Hierusalem had made the Kingdome of Egypt tributarie vnto him (which tribute Almericke his brother and Successour claymed as due and payable vnto him, and the Egyptians flatly denying the same:) Almericke with an Army entred into Egypt and in the deserte vanquished in battayle Dargan the Admirall of the Kingdome with all his power, and compelled him to flye for his saugarde into the Citie Bilbis. This was about that time of the yere, whē the ryuer Nile, by course had his yereely incremente and ouerflowed his Bankes, whose Dammes and Schutes the Egyptians of purpose brake downe, because they would stoppe Almericke from further pursuit and victorie: wherfore laden with spoyle and ryche bootyes of hys enemyes hee rettyed backe agayne into hys owne Countrey and Kingdome, for feare least hee with hys whole Host if they had longer taried, shoulde haue bene drownded and swallowed by with the mercuriall water.

This ouerthrow and aduerser fortune of Dargan, gaue occasion to Sanar (whom the same Dargan a litle before perforce had displaced and put out of the office and dignitie of Amyrallship, and caused to flye for succour to the Arabians, hys Tribe fellows) to go to Norandine the Sonne of Sanguin & most mighty King of Damasco, by him to be shrowded from the malice of hys aduersary. And

The thirde Booke

that Realmes and Countrey, efflonnes invaded Egypt and took by force the Citie Bilbis, shewing much crueltie with fire and sword to all sortes of people, sparing neither age nor sex. Wherefore Sanar desired ayde of Norandine, & upon promise of great Summes of money, so long staied and repelled the impetuous course of Almerick his victorie, till such time that his ayde came, of whose comming when Almerick had understandinge, he raised his Campe and departed out of Egypt. Wherefore Syracon who had the leading and conduct of Norandines men finding Egypt without any foynne ayde or succour marched straight to caye the chase & royal Citie of the whole

rentage nothing worshipfull.

With these aydes, did Sanar boldly invade Egypt, at whose comming Dargan being merueilously abashed, desired ayde of the King of Hierusalem, couenauntinge and firmly promysing, inuolablly to obserue a perpetuall League with hym, conditionally that he woulde now be at this pinch helpe him. But before his ambassadors were returned with any answer, he was by one of his owne men shot through the Body with an Arrow, whereof he immediatly dyed, hauing now already gotten the upper hande of Sanar and the Turkes at one entier Battaille. Whereby Sanar as wel as though he had bene the victour indeede, obtayned his purpose, and put all his kinsfolkes and sampler frendes to death.

The Caliph all this while as though he had bene lulled in a sound sleepe, gaue himselfe onely to voluptuousenes, ease and ryot. For he cared not who ruled the rolle, nor who executed the affaires of the common wealth so that he might haue y name and be called the Supreme Lord and

Of the Saracen Historie. 116

the whole kingdome. Perceiuing therfore that the people byed and bozne in the Northen quarters were both a pter and also stouter for the warres then the Southerne bozne were, entred into League with certayne people inhabiting about Mazotis and Pontus, called Circassians (of Plinie and olde writers, Zigians) and bartered with them for an entercourse of Merchandise betwene them & him, namely that they should serue him or Boyes and young striplings at a certaine price. Who beinge brought into Egypt and from their youth trayned up in seates of chieualrie and warlike discipline, should do nothing but handsomely practise the handling of their weapons and artillery, & when time required serue in warres and should haue the ordering of all honours and dignities

no ment to doe more, for a grudge and hatred that he bore to his aduersarie. And lequing a great power of Arabians, Persians and Turkes which obeyed the Babylonian Bishop as their head, and takinge as much victuall with them as would serue for many dayes because of the inhabitable Wildernesse that is betwene Syria and Egypt, toke his voyage againe into Egypt.

Whereof hearing Almerick, marcheth against him wth al his power. Both their Armies met in the Wildernesse, where betwene them was fought a cruell and bloudye conflict, with doubtful fortune on either party. But in the end, Syracon fledde and with the remnaunt of his Host, came to Alexandria, whiche Citie Almerick after longe Siege toke by surrendrie: and Syracon with his company got him to Damasco, & Almerick returned home into his owne Kingdome.

But within a while after, suspecting either that Sanar secretly practized and went about to enter in league with Norandine against him, or els feigninge a matter (or rather picking a quarell) for a desire that he had to wyne

The thirde Booke

that Realme and Countrey, effloned invaded Egypt and toke by force the Citie Bilbis, thewinge much crueltie with fire and sword to all sortes of people, sparing neither age nor sex. Wherfoze Sanar desired ayde of Norandine, & upon promise of great Summes of money, so long staid and repressed the impetuous course of Almerick his victorie, till such time that his ayde came, of whose comming when Almerick had vnderstandinge, he raised his Campe and departed out of Egypt. Wherfoze Syracon who had the leading and conduct of Norandines men finding Egypt without any fozaime ayde or succour marched straight to caye the chiefe & royal Citie of the whole realme, vnd slew Sanar comming out to parle and confer with him. And when he had got the possession of the Citie he went to do his dutie and exhibit honour to the Caliph, of whom hee was created Admirall of the Lande, which dignitie he enioyed a yere and then died: leauinge behinde him for his Successoure Saladine his Brother Sonne, a man of a surpassing and polytique wit, skilful, valyaunt, and of nature most franck and lyberall. Who immediatlie murdered the Caliph with all his bloudes and Progenie, to th'intent he might alone haue both the Authozities and romes. Thus was that most wealtheie Kingdome brought vnder the obedience of the Turkes in the yere of our Lozde. 1150.

Afterward Saladine (as he was a man verie prudent and wise perceiuing how tenderlie and effeminatly the Egyptians liued, insomuch that when any inuasion of foreigne hostilitie approached or were like to grow, & kings were euer glad and faine to craue fozeigne ayde to support and helpe them, determined with himselfe to institute some kinde or order of warfare and to trayne vp a troupe of such souldiours as should be hable at al bzunts and assaies to be as a rampire, or strong Bulwarke to the

Egypt when it first came into the possession of the Turkes.

Of the Saracen Historie. 116

the whole kingdome. Perceiuing therfoze that the people bred and bozne in the Southen quarters were both a pater and also stouter for the warres then the Southerne bozne were, entred into League with certayne people inhabiting about Maxotis and Pontus, called Circassians (of Plinie and olde writers, Zigians) and bartered with them for an entercourse of Merchandise betwene them & him, namely that they should serue him of Boyes and young Striplinges at a certaine price. Who beyng brought into Egypt and from their youth trayned vp in feates of chieualrie and warlike discipline, should do nothing but handsomely practise the handling of their weapons and artillery, & when time required serue in warres and should haue the ordering of all honours and dignities bellicall. For the Zigians are a people of nature verie fierce, accustomed euen from the Cradle to abide all manner of labour, hardnes and trauell, inhabiting that parts of Pontus and Meotis which is about the riuer Phasis which riuer is the bounder and meere of Colchis, and the mouth of Tanais, which Countrey or region containeth welnere 500. myles.

These people dwell not in Cities and Townes, but wander and are dispeared here and there without any certayne habitation from Village to Village. Christians they are by their profession and religion, albeit they vse many rites vnto ours: their Infants as sone as they are bozne (yea though it be in the middest of winter) they cary vnto a riuer and there washe them. They are for the mosse part faire of complexion and of comely stature, the countrey is fenny and full of reedes, whereof they doo make Houelles and Cotages to dwell in, they be at continuall warres with the Tarcarians and other Nations aboute them.

The Nobles and Gentlemen amonge them neuer goe but in Armour and Coates of fence, and alwayes ryde on

These people were after called Mamalukes.

The thirde Booke

Altenetenant and chiefe Captaine vnder the Emperour of Tartarians hym ouercame and tooke Prisoner in the yeere of our Lorde God. 1258. and caused Mustacene Munibila (who at that tyme had that office and dignitie, among the buyge and inestimable heapes of treasure and riches which he had boozed by and miserably scraped together) to bee samythed. After this, almost for 200. yeeres space the Saracenes had no high Byshoppe, till at length in Persia the lynage and offspringe of Mahomet beganne againe to raygne in the yeere. 1480. wherbye howe and by what sort it came to passe, resteth heere to be shewed and described.

There was a certayne Byynce among the Persians, Lorde of a Towne called Ardenel, and his name was Sophi who greatly glozied, and boze himselfe very loftie and high for that he was as he saide descended of the race and Bedagretue of Ali the Sonne in lawe of Mahomet by Musa Cazinc his stephtwe, of whom we spake in the first Booke. This selowe nolwe sayng the Babylonian Caliphe to bee slayne, and the contrarie faction which the Turkes maynteyned and kept to bee depzessed and tryumphed ouer by the Tartarians, beganne frankly and boldly to vtter his mynde and oppynion concernyng Religion. And because Hoceme the Sonne of Ali from whom he made his auant to bee lineally descended, had. xij. Sonnes, therefore he willing to geue some difference and token wherby his Sectaries might be discerned and knowen from all others, commaunded and ordeyned that so many as woulde embrace and folowe his Loze and Doctrine shoulde weare a purple Raybon or Labell hanginge doونه from theyr weareth Weyle which all Turkes weare aswell as they vpon their heades, called Tulibance, and the same in the middle to bee reyled vp into, xij. toppes or heigthes withoute the Tulibance.

After

Of the Saracen Historie. 118

After he was deade, his sonne Guines succeeded in his roume, who for learning and sanctitie gotte such estimation and fame throughout the whole Orient, that the most mightie Emperoure of the Parthians, named Tamburlane (euen he which tooke Barazete the King of Turkes Prisoner) leading his Army & passing through Persia, dayned to tourne out of his way and to visite as a man of most holy life and vnspotted sanctitie. At the request of which Guines, the same Tamburlane freely deliuered out of his captiuitie. xxiij. Prisoners which he had taken in his Warres and as then had with him in his Campe: whom afterwarde Guines instructed and trained by in his Sect and discipline, whose seruice and helpe Secaidar his Sonne in his warres afterwarde vsed. For he after the death of his father Guines, reposing his speciall trust & chiefe strength in them, warred vpon the Georgians a people of Scythia being Christians bordering vpon his Countreyes, and by their help assisted and put them to many foyles, ouerthrowes, and distresses.

Where raygned in Persia a certayne Turke named Mirza Ceunda, who warred wyth Hacembecke (whom some doe call Assambey) King of the greater Armenia which is of them called Diarbeck, being also a Turke aswell as hee: in whiche Warres Hacembecke gotte the vpperhande, and slewe his enemye Mirza in Battayle, and hauyng wonne Persia, because hee was but of a base stocke and obscure familie and withoute kinmen and Allies, hee meant to make and establishe the state of his Kingdome the surer by linking in affinitie with some puyssaunt house and thereupon gaue his daughter wherby he begat vpon his wife the Emperour of Trapezunte his daughter (who was a Christian) in marriage vnto Secaidar. After the deathe of Hacembecke, succeeded Iacob Beg, wherbye wordes signifyeth a Lorde.

Beg in the Turke language signifyeth a Lorde.

This

The thirde Booke

This Jacob fearinge the great power of his Brother in lawe Secaidar (partlye gotten by his new Wedd, and partlye by his Warres with the Georgians) priuely sent ayd to his Enemies, and caused him to be slaine. But his two sonnes Ismahel and Solyman, he committed in charge to one of his famyllyer and assured Frændes to carpe and conueygge a farrre of, vnto Mansor Deporna, Constable of the Citie of Siracia: willing and freightlie charging him to keepe them in sure warde and custodie with, in the strong Castell of Zalgah, which standeth vpon a high and inaccessible Rock, till such time as by expresse certificate he should otherwise countremaunde him. But Mansor taking remozse and pittie on them, for the honoz of Ali (of whose auncient blood they were deriued) kepte them like Princes and vsed them most honourable, causing them to be trained vp and instructed in learninge with his owne Childzen.

And after certayne yeres, falling into a græuous sicknesse and maladie, insomuch that he saw himselfe not like any longer to liue, and fearing least his Sonne Caceme beinge a younge man, woulde after the death of him, deliuer these young Orphans and fatherlesse Childzen to Rocene (which reigned after his Father Jacob) furnished them with money, Horse and Guides needfull for their journey, and sent them home againe to their Mother and Kinsfolkes.

These Orphans being enforzmed of their state and noble birth, and by what meanes they had bene preserued (which thing befoze that present thei knew nothinge of) their Kinsmen, Adherents and fauozers, for their fathers sake flocking in from euery part vnto them. Ismael the elder of the twaine, whose wit was both moze pregnant and deeper then his Brothers, (druone thereto by desiring a naturall zeale) openlie befoze his frænds protested that he would neuer rest, till he had reuenged the murder and death

Of the Saracen Historie. 119

death of his father, and after he had made certaine roades into the Marches and Pertinaces of the Georgians (his power also daylie encreasing) he named himselfe Protector of Ali his doctrine and defendour of all his authorities; and therewithall denounced open Warre vpon Rocene King of Persia and all his pertakers. And because he had six Brothers, which contended with him for the succession of the Crowne, he slew him and all the rest, sauing only Marabeck, who was his youngest sonne.

This Marabeck fledde to Solyman Prince of Turkes, and requested his ayde; tother vpon ensued much trouble and great Warres betwene the Othomannians and Sophians. But befoze he had obtained any ayde of the Turkes to succour him; Ismael had wonne not onely al Persia, but also atchieued and won many notable victories of the Tartarians. And thus the Saracenes expulsiue the Turkes, began agayne to raigne in Persia, in the yere after the natiuitie of our Saviour Christe 1500. and there do raigne tyll this day.

The Kinges of Persia be right saracenes.

And the Turkes with all their powers together hauing conquered all the Romane Prouinces in Asia as farre as the Sea, distributed and cast lottes for the same among themselves, in which distribution and Lotterie, the maigne countrey of Phrygia as far as Philadelphia, and nere to Antioch (situate vpon the riuer Meander) fell vnto Carman Alisire, whereof the Countrey was afterwarde named Caramania. All from thence to Smyrna and the inner Coast of Ionia, happened vnto one Saracene.

Magnesia, Priene and Ephesus were allotted vnto Sasan. From Lydia and Etolia to Mysia situate by Hellespont, Calames and his Sonne Cerasus enioyed. From the riuer Sangar to Paphlagonia, the Sonnes of Armurios parted among them. All within Olympus and the whole Countrey of Bythinia, fell vnto Atman, other

his wife

An example of pittie toward them that were fatherlesse.

The thirde Booke

hoise named Othoman, (of whose race the Emperours of Turkes which euer since and now at this day raighe in Turkye are lineally descended) in the yere of our saluation 1300. Albert the firste of that name, descended of the house of Austrich being then Cesar and Empe-

rouer of Germanie, And from this Othoman, Laonicus Chalcondyla an Athenian, Pau-

lus Iapetus and other both Graeke and Latine Turcographers doe beginne their histories: wherfore to auoid tediousnes, least after Homere, we should seeme to write an other Ilias, here we make an ende.

FINIS.

His. Turc. lib. 3. a. translatum ex Curio

A

A Summarie or breefe Chronicle of Saracens and Turkes, continued from the birthe of Mahomet, their first penult Prophet and Founder, till this present yeere.

1575



Mahomet the Sonne of Abedela and Emma, of the ligne of Ismael, was bozne at Ieraripe in Arabia, in the time that Maurice was Emperoure and Gregory the first, Pope of Rome.

Mahomet patched together his Alcorane, (a Booke containing his pestilent doctrine & grosse opinions) through instruction and procurement of two hereticall Monkes, Iohn of Antioch and Sergius of Italy. And therewith seducing the light bryained Arabians and other fickle minded people of Asia, called them Saracens.

At the age of 41. yeres he dyed, and was buried in Mecha a Citie of Persia.

Hierusalem after it had bene besieged by the Saracens the full space of two yeres, was taken and spoiled.

All Syria ouerrunne and wasted by the Saracenes.

The Saracenes revolted from the Emperours of Romanes.

Antioch destroyed by Saracenes, Damascus taken, Phaznicia inuaded, and Egypt subdued.

The Saracenes wanne the greatest part of Africa and layed it to their Emprye.

The moste Noble Ile of Rhodes inuaded by the Saracenes and taken: out of whiche they caried awaye with them great abundance of Golde, and a Noble Image of the Sonne, called a Colosse, whiche

lik ij

was

120

*De Saracenis
p. 100. Chron.
100. p. 100.
100. p. 100.*

100. p. 100.

100. p. 100.

100. p. 100.

100. p. 100.

100. p. 100.

100. p. 100.

100. p. 100.

100. p. 100.

100. p. 100.

100. p. 100.

100. p. 100.

100. p. 100.

100. p. 100.

100. p. 100.

100. p. 100.

100. p. 100.

100. p. 100.

100. p. 100.

100. p. 100.

100. p. 100.

A brieue Chronicle

was in height, 110. foote. The Masse therof being solde to the Iewes, was as much as 900 Camelles coulde carge away.

656. They practysed outrageous Pyracie on y^e Egcan Sea, and did much harme to the Isles called Cyclades.

663. The Saracens discomfited Olympius the Exarch of Italy with all his Hoast in Sicilie.

668. Constantine the fourth, entred into league with Muchamed King of Saracens upon condition that the Saracens shoulde pay a great Summe of Gold to the Romanes, with a goodly Hoyle and a Childe of noble byrth.

672. The Saracens rushed into Sicilie, and after they had taken Syracuse and wasted the whole Countrey, they returned backe to Alexandria.

675. Constantinople was besieged by the Saracens, vnto which, they gaue sundry assaultes but al in vaine: wherefore they shipped themselves intending to haue returned home, but the greater part of them through Whylowacke perished by the way.

676. The Romanes ouercame the Saracens, and slawe of them 30000.

679. Peace the second time was made betwene y^e Romanes and the Saracens for xxx. yeeres, upon condition, that the Saracens shoulde pay yearly to the Romanes 3000. ll. of Gold, 50. noble Prisoners and as many Hoyses.

686. The Saracens in the reigne of their King Ammirach, invaded Africa and Lybia, & carped away many spoiles.

687. After the death of Constantine, the Emperour Iustinian entred into league with the Saracens upon these conditions; that they shoulde ressoze vnto the Emperre, Africa and Lybia, and pay every day for the space of ten yeeres, a thousande Crotones, a Hoyle, and a Childe of noble byrth, in the name of a Tribute.

688. Iustinian breaking this League, and loyning battayle with the Saracens, receyued at theyr handes much harme and

Of Saracens and Turkes. 121

and great ouerthowes.

The Saracens putting the Romanes to flight, greatly enhaunced their name and authoritie: contrariwise, the dignitie of the Romanes therby greatly decayed.

Abimelech King of Saracens, inuading Africa, enioyed not his victoery there long.

The Romans spoyling Syria, discomfited 200000. Saracens.

While Iustinian and Leontius were struing for the Empire, the Saracens againe inuaded A^a.

The Saracens sayling out of Lybia, this yere set first foote into Spaine, wasting Aragon, Betica and Lusitanie.

The Saracens of Asia, landed at Constantinople with 300. Saile, and fiercely besieged the same both by Sea and lande. The same yere in Bulgaria there were slaine 22000. Saracens.

Zulcemō King of Saracens, dyed in his Camp before Constantinople, in whose place succeded Amirath.

During this Siege of Constantinople, many of y^e Saracens dyed of samyne, plague and colde. They that remained alque meaning to retourne home, by tempest on the Sea and Lightning, perished, being partly consumed by fire and partly drowned in the waters: insomuch that of their whole flote which was 3000. Shippes moze and lesse, there escaped but only five. This Siege lasted fully two yeeres. The same yere the Saracens thinking to recouer some of theyr former losses, with a huge Army entred into Spayne, and spoyled all the Countrey including onely Galicia.

Abidimar Capitaine of the Saracens in Africa, sacked and spoyled Burdeaux a Citie of Fraunce, and removing thence to Poytiers, was mette withall and repelled by Charles Martellus. Their Capitaine and Prince Abidimar being slaine, the Saracens for a while were quiet and medled not with any moe warres.

It is.

The

A breefe Chronicle.

- 730 The Saracenes bringyng wyth them theyr wyues, Chilozen and whole Householde, entred a freshe into Fraunce, as though they had meant there continual-lye to haue dwelled, and planted themselves for euer. Wyth them, Charles the Great ioynd Battayle, ha-uyng the ayde of the Frenche Nation, and siewe of them. 380000. and losse of his owne men onely 1500 Souloours.
- 735 Charles King of Fraunce, by his valiaunt knyght- hood delquered out of the handes of the Saracens, the noble Citie of Auinion, whyche they had befoze guile-fully surpized.
- 737 Charles restozed many other Cityes to peace and li- bertie, expulsiug out the Saracens: slaying Amorrhous one of their Captaines, & putting Achinc another of their Wyues to flight.
- 738 The same Charles by helpe of Luieprand Kinge of Lombardie, dyane and expulsed all the Saracens out of Fraunce.
- 744 Constantinus Copronymus Emperour of Constancinople furnished out a flauie against the Saracenes in Egypt.
- 759 The Saracens in the East were euer wyning some- what that belonged to the Romans and layed it to theyr owne Emprye, by meanes that the Romans disagreed among themselves, and bent themselves only against the French Kings.
- 778 Charles the Great, had a noble victorie agaynst the Sa- racenes in Spaine. Rowlande in combate ouercame a Saracen that often chalenged the Chyistians. Thzough which victorie and vpperhande, he made the waye the easyer for the rest of his frendes and Countreyemen to wyne the victorie.
- 780 Leo the fourth Emperour made a voyage against the Saracens in Syria.

Aaron

Of Saracens and Turkes. 122

- Aaron Prince of Saracens wyth 300000 lyght Horse- men inuaded Nicephorus Emperour of Constantino- ple, and made hym glad to become Tributario, and to accepte such offers as greatly myghed and diseased hym, but there was no remedy.
- 803 Sardinia and Corfica two Ilandes, were spoiled by the Saracens.
- 807 The Saracens wanne the Ile of Crete, and ouercame the Grækes in two Battayles.
- 826 The Saracens of Asia rushed into Palestina, and they of Africa into Sicilie.
- 828 Boniface Countee of Corfica, hauing no helpe of the Chyistians sayng onely the Petrurians, sayled into Africa: and in foure Battayles, betweene Carthage and Veica, had of them the victorie and vpperhand, and so feared the Saracenes wyth the terrour of his one- ly name, that they were faine to depart out of Sicilie, and get them home to defend theyr owne.
- 830 Many Countreyes receyued greate damage at the handes of the Saracenes, and manye Cyties for feare, in euery quarter fledde and submitted themselves vnto them.
- 836 Saba kynge of Moozes and Capitayne of the Sa- racenes wasted Sicilie and all the Countrey about Cro- zena, and tooke Tarento: agaynst whom, Theophi- lus the Emperour and the Venetian flete stode at resist- staunce, but all in vaine.
- 843 The Saracenes inuadyng Hetturia and Latium, spoiled and sacked Rome: but befoze they retourne home, the greatest parte of them perished by Shypp- wycke.
- 845 Hauyng wasted Illyrium and Dalmatia, they coa- sted alonge the Adrian Sea, and burned Ancona a Citie of Picene, after they had taken the spoyle there- of.
- 846 Leo

A breefe Chronycle

847. Leo the fourth, Pope of Rome, compelled the residue of the Saracens to packe oute of the Haven of Ostia, and strengthened all the Countrey beyonde Tyber againste them.
867. The Saracens agayne (onely for hottie and spoyle) brake into Italie, and wasted with fire and sword all the Countrey aboute Beneuent by the Samnytes. But by King Ludouick and Kinge Lotharius they were put to flight.
870. The Saracens renewed Warren with the Persians: The Persians thzough the help of the Turkish Souldyours (at that time the Turkes inhabited Mount Caucasus and were called Tartarians) overcame them. Cuer after from that time, the Turkes neuer left Asia, and not onely encroched vpon the Domynions of the Saracens, but also were called by the same name as they were.
878. After the Saracenes had enioyed Sicilie xlvij. yeres, they were thence cleane expelled.
881. Charles surnamed the Thicke, repulsed the Saracens breaking into Italy.
891. Nicetes one of the Capitaines of the Constantinopolitane Emperoure, had a notable victorie ouer the Saracens.
910. The Saracens invaded Puell and Calabria.
913. At Lyris a riuer of Campania, the Saracens as they were spolyng the Cities belonging to the Romans, were overcome.
914. The Saracens breaking out of Fraxinete, came as far as Aquisgrane where, encounteringe with the Inhabytantes, they were utterly destroyed and Sagitus theyr Capitaine slayne.
935. The Saracens spoyled Geane a Citty of Liguria, and with great hotties returned into Afryca.
941. Hugh King of Italie wanne Fraxinete, and burned the haute of the Saracens.

Ramyre

of Saracens and Turkes. 123.

Ramyre King of Gallice, discomfited a great Armye of Saracenes in Spayne.

The Saracenes committing many murders and firyngs in Calabria, Puell and Lucania, by the Knightlye prowess of Alberick Marquesse of Hetruria were repulsed, and nere to Minturne in Campania by the Ryuer Lyris vanquished. There intentes were to haue come to Rome.

The Saracenes by force keeping the Mount Garganus made out of it many Roades into the Countrey nere aboutynge, and burned Beneuent.

Ocho the first, Emperour of Germanes, dzaue the Saracenes out of Italie, and dispossessed them cleane out of their holde in Mount Garganus.

The Saracenes recovered Consentia, out of the which a litle before they were thzowen out by the Hungarians.

The Ile of Crete taken from the Saracenes.

Ocho the seconde, receiued a great ouerthrowe of the handes of the Saracenes, in a battayle fought with them in Calabria the Ides of Iulie, with whom the Greeces had stricken a League and ioyned polners, His stoutest souldiours and Capitaines being in this conflict slaine, he himselfe had much a doe by flight to saue himselfe.

Alphonfus King of Spaine, besieging a stronge holde of the Saracens called Viscum, was wounded with an Arrowe and therof dyed.

The Saracens deuindinge their host into two partes, landed in Italie, toke Capua and besieged Barum.

The Saracenes of Asia toke Hierusalem.

Henry the second Emperour of Germanes, dzaue the Saracens out of Capua, and persecuted with greenous Make certayne Capitaines which sponzed their side.

The Egyptian Caliph, thzough he ayd of an army of Saracens and Turkes (which then ruled all the coast in Persia) spoyled the Temple of our Lord at Hierusalem.

All

944.

951.

952.

969.

970.

977.

982.

1000.

1007.

1009.

1013.

1028.

1030.

A breefe Chronycle

- 1119 Baldwyne after xliij. monthes Imprisonment, decey-
ued his keepers and escaping out of prison, retourned to
his owne people.
- 1122 Dominicus Michael Duke of Venice with a well fur-
nished shauie, greatly annoyed the Saracenes in Syria.
To the Venetians for their worthy service and valiaunt-
nes were graunted sundry great privileges.
- 1125 An Army of 400000 men set upon the Christians and
were encountred withall by 3000. Christians: who tho-
row the goodnes of God, slew of their Enemies with the
sword 7000, and 5000 dyed of the pestilence, so that the victorie fell
to the Christians.
- 1127 In Syria the Christians discomfited the Saracens in
two notable overthrowes: in the first conflict 2500 of them
were slaine. In the other, although both Armies were af-
flicted, yet the Christians obtained the victorie.
- 1129 The king of Ascalon was by Baldwin repressed,
and the king of Damascus in three battailes overcome.
- 1130 After the death of Baldwin the third king of Hierusa-
lem, Fulco was made the fourth king.
- 1131 The Cite of Tripolis by treason was slaine, king Ful-
co was put to flight by his Enemies and condescended to
very hard conditions, to be clearly deliuered from siege.
- 1133 The Christians cooped in fight with the Egyptians and
were superiours.
- 1139 Ascalon was recovered by the Christians.
- 1142 Fulco the fourth king of Hierusalem in hunting a hare
and ryding fast after the game, through a fall from his
horse dyed: after whom succeeded his Sonne Baldwin
who was the fift king.
- 1143 The Cite Edessa and almost all Mesopotamia was
wonne by the Saracens & Alaph Captains of Turks,
which now were of great name and power in the East.
where they killed without all mercy a wonderfull num-
ber of Christians, rauishing mens wiues in the Church of
Sainte

Of Saracens and Turkes. 125

Saint John Baptiste, & in despyght of Christianitie eyen
vpon the Alter.

Baldwine the thirde of that name, and the fift king of
Hierusalem, conquered Gaza and Ascalon and cast out al
the Saracens. And at Hierico he overcame and put to
flight Norandine spaiter of the Chivalry of Damascus
and slue 5000. of his enemyes.

Manuel Emperour of Constantinople with muche
ouersight and negligence led through dangerous wayes
and desert places his Christian Hostes against the Sara-
cens, insomuch that for scarcitie of vittayles and other ne-
cessaries, they could atchieue no notable enterprize against
the inscraunt people.

Roger King of Sicilie and Normannes, made the Afri-
cane Saracens tributarie to him for xxx. yeres, and toke
their king prisoner.

This yere Conrade the second, Emperour, leuyed a
great power against the Saracens, against whom he had
in battaile but ill successe.

Lewys King of Fraunce, assembled a mightie Armie to
go against the Infideles.

Out of England, Flaunders and Lozaine were furni-
shed out 200 saile against the Saracens.

This yere Conrade the Emperour passing over Bos-
phorus without anye resistance, came nere to his ene-
mies: but for want of vittuals and (as some say) his corne
being corrupted and mingled with lyme and plaister, he
was glad to stay himselfe and go no further and to bring
backe his Armye. The Saracens vnderstanding hereof,
set vpon them behind and slue of them certain thousandes.

The same yere the French king came to the Empe-
rour to aide him: but by reason that his Armye was great-
ly distressed and pinched with famine, he could bring no
notable atchieuance to passe. The same time, the Vene-
tians with a well furnished shauie went into Asia, to aide
the

A breefe Chronycle

the Emperour against the Saracens.

1148 The Spanyardes expulſing the Saracens, recovered Almaria and Tortoſa, two goodly embattailed Cities.

The ſame yeere, Damalcus was beſieged by the Syrians, Frenchmen, and Hieroſolymitanes, and the Wammures thereof deſaced. And when they were even at the poynt to haue wonne the Citie and ſuboned the Saracenes, the chiefe Princes and Capitaines diſagreyng and falling out amonge themſelues, called theyr owne ſouldiours euery man together, and departed thence, leauing the ſiege.

1149 Raymund King of Antioch with hys whole Hoſt was diſcomfited by the Saracens, who ſpoyled all hys Countrey. Antioch it ſelfe by the Kinge of Hieruſalem was hardy reſcued and ſaued.

1151 Baldwin King of Hieruſalem, diſcomfited the Egypci-ans and Babilonians.

1158 The Saracenes drave the Spanyardes by force of Armes out of Almaria.

1159 Baldwin ſet at libertie and reſtozed many Cities, expulſing thence the Saracens.

1164 Baldwin dyed; and in his ſteede reigned hys brother Almericke, the firſt king of Hieruſalem.

1170 Almericke in Egypt obtained a noble victory.

1171 The ſame king beſieged Damiaſc; but in the ende he agreed to a peace: bypon conditions neither honorable nor profitable.

1172 The Saracenes of Africa made manye Roades into Spaine.

1175 Almericke King of Hieruſalem dyed of an Ague: And his ſonne Baldwin was annointed the ſeuenth king.

1177 Baldwin in two battailes vanquiſhed Saladin King of Egypt, and brought much treaſure into Hieruſalem.

1180 The Daughter of the king of Saracens being married to Prince Pagane, was taken priſoner on the ſea, by the King

Of Saracens and Turkes. 126

King of Sicilie, in hir voyage and iourney homeward to hir huſband.

This yeere, the Chriſtians in Hieruſalem were overcome.

1181 Maufamunch king of the Saracens with great coſtes and charges repayzed Carthage.

1184 Baldwin the viij. king of Hieruſalem, beyng infected with Leproſie dyed. His nephew Baldwin, his ſiſters ſonne was elected king after him, but by ſrowning deſerties he was kepte backe from his dignitie. After whom ſucceeded the viij. king Guye of Leſingham.

Beſtwene this Guye king of Hieruſalem and Raymund Earle of Tripolis, there aroſe diſſenſion and batturging whiche was the cauſe, that the Chriſtians were brought into extreme daunger.

1186 The Chriſtians loyning battayle with the Armye of Saladin, had a lamentable overthrow. In this battayle were ſlaine 20,000. Chriſtians. King Guye was taken Priſoner, and the Citie of Tripolis, dyed ſodainly.

1187 Hieruſalem hauing now bene enloped and poſſeſſed by the Chriſtians 117. viij. was this yeere by ſurrendre deliuered by to the king of Saracens, and the Chriſtians there expelled, the ſecond day of October.

This yeere all Iurie was wonne from the Chriſtians by the Saracens: the Cities of Tyre, Tripolis and Antioche being with much a doe and hardy kept.

1188 Fridericke Emperour of Romans with his ſonne Fridericke, Philip king of Fraunce, Richard king of England with manye other Princes and Nobles, aſſembling their Parliaments, decreed & thoughtly determined to ayde the Chriſtians in Iurie. Great preparation was made for this voyage. Fridericke leauing hys Armie in to Syria, and wyning the leſſe Armenia, went in the beate time of Sommer, into the River Selephus to bathe & waſhe himſelfe, where by miſfortune he was drowned. The

A breefe Chronycle

1248. **Lewes** Kinge of Fraunce, went with an Armie toward the holy Land, with entent, to supplant the Saracenes and relieue the Chzistians.
1249. The sayd King Lewes, ioyning battayle with the Saracenes, brought vnder his subiection Damiatra a populous citie and curiously embatteyled.
1250. The same King Lewes, in a terrible conflict at Faramia was taken prisoner by the Saracens, with his two brethren Charles and Alphonse. Whereupon Damiatra was redeliuered into the hands of the Saracens, whereby he saued his owne lyfe and his frendes, and was deliuered out of Prison. This kinge was taken the fift day of Aprill.
1252. The Saracens lost the Ile called Baleares, which the Duke of Aragon subdued.
1261. The kinges of Spaine fallynge at variaunce and discord, the one brother fled into Fraunce to craue ayde, the other into Africa to desire assistance of the Saracens against his owne brother, whereby they wrought much scath both to themselves and to their countrey.
1262. Deadly hatred and grudge fell betwene the Venetians and the Genoways, whereby the Chzistians inhabiting Ptolomais and Tyre were grievously afflicted.
1265. The Saracens drave the chzistians cleane out of Siria.
1268. Antioch was sacked by Bodegar the Sultane.
1270. Yet againe, Lewes the french kinge with his three Sonnes sayled into Africa against the Saracens with a great power. Where by his knightly prowesse he had the victorie of them and besieged Carthage: but by reason of the ynholosome countrey and chaunge of ayre, the pestilence infected his Host, wherof the king himself dyed, and his sonne John also, and then brake by the siege.
1281. The Armenians and Scythians at Gamala a citie of Iurie were destroyed by the Saracens, with the citie also.
1289. The citie Tripolis was taken & fiered by the Sultane of Egypt, and the Chzistians in most cruell wyse slayne. The els caryed away captiue.

Of Saracens and Turkes. 128

The cities of Tyre, Sydon, Tripolis and Beritus, by the same Sultane, were fiered & rased euen with the ground. Ptolomais also beinge a place of refuge for the dispersed chzistians, was taken without any resistance and destroyed, and the very foundations digged vp. The chzistians which fled away and soughte the citie, in their way toward Crete perished by shipwreck and were drowned. And thus were the Chzistians utterly chased out of Siria 190 yeeres after they won it vnder Godfrey of Bolleine.

The kingdome of Turkes.

Othoman a man of obscure birth & very ambitious, growing in great wealth & riches by spoyle and robbery, was the first that toke vpon him, the name of Kinge of Turkes. He within 1. yeeres space subdued to his reignioye a great part of Bythinia & other countreis about the Euxine Sea, whose generation since, hath wrought much mischief to Chzistendome.

The Ile of Rhodes was won fro the Sar. by the hospitallers.

Alphonse King of Castile in a notable conflict ouercame the Saracens, and toke two mighty cities.

Othoman King of Turkes dyed and after him succeeded Orchanes his Sonne, the second king of that Nation.

While Cantacuzen & Paleologus contended for the Empire of Constantinople, Orchanes by force won the most noble citie of Prusia.

Orchanes in a battayle against the Tartarians (so far the Scythians called) lost the feld and was with many of his army slaine. After him succeeded Amurathes the third kinge of Turkes.

Amurathes through the couetousnes and treason of the Genowais (lending their ships vnto him) passed the streits of Hellespont to Abydus, where he conquered the cities of Philippople and Hadrianople vnto his subiection.

pm ij This

A brieſe Chronicle

1373. This Ammuraches invaded Seruia and Bulgaria, conquered them from the Chriſtians, and at the ſame tyme tooke and ſlue Lazarus King of Seruia.
1373. Ammuraches invading the higher Myſia, was thruſt into the ſlanke with a Dagger, by one that was a faithfull ſervant to the aboue named King Lazarus, (whoſe pretence was to reuenge his maſters death) of the whiche wound he dyed. After Ammuraches thus ſlaine, Baiazeth his ſonne, obteyned the kingdome, & was the fourth king of Turkes, and ſlue his owne brother.
1374. Marke Cratenique king of Bulgaria, with all the nobilitie of his realme, was vanquiſhed in battayle by Baiazeth.
1376. He ſpoyled Boſna Croacia, Illyria, Albania and VValachia, kylling many thouſandes of Chriſtians, being partly ſlaine and partly caried into captiuitie.
1389. Conſtantinople was afflicted and beſieged fully, viij. yeres by this vnnmercifull Tyrant the Turkiſh king.
1390. The Lordes of England and Fraunce at the inſtance of the Genowayes ioyning with them, made a voyage into Africa againſt the Saracenes and compelled them to reſtore and ſet at libertie the Chriſtian Priſoners living among them, and to pay 10000 Crownes.
1392. The VValachians craued ayde of the Turkes againſt the Hungarians, whom (notwithſtanding) the Hungarians vanquiſhed and put to flight.
1396. The Chriſtians and the Turkes mette and ioynd battayle at Nicopolis, vpon the .28. day of September. But the victorie fell to Baiazeth who had there 300000. ſtoute fighting men well appoynted, wherof 60000 were horſemen. The Army of the Chriſtians (being French & Hungarians) was not about .lxx. thouſande, among whom there were about .xx. M. Horſemen. The French Captaines were in a maner all taken Priſoners. Sigismund the king of Hungarie himſelfe eſcaped hardily by flight.

Of Saracens and Turkes. 129

In this battaile were ſlaine of Chriſtians 20000. and of Turkes 60000. This lamentable ouerthrowe happened throughte the diſcorde of the Chriſtian Host among themſelues, by reaſon that one whyle the French and another while the Hungarians claimed the firſt onſet and the leading of the Vauntgard. After this battaile the Turke retredde backe to the ſiege of Conſtantinople.

Tamburlane King of Scythia, a man of obſcure byrthe and Pedagregio, grew to ſuch power, that he maintained in his Court daily attending on him, a thouſand and CC. Horſemen. This Prince invading the Turkes dominions in Aſia with an innumerable multitude of armed ſouldiours, in the conſynes of Gallicia and Bithynia, nere to Mount Scella, gaue to the Turke a ſore battaile, in the which, he ſlew of them two hundredeth thouſand. He tooke Baiazeth the Great Turke Priſoner, and kepte hym in a Cage, tyed and bounde wyth golden Chaynes. When ſo ever hee tooke Horſe, he cauſed the ſayde Baiazeth to be brought out of hys Cage, & uſed his necke as a ſtyrrope: and in this ſorte caried hym throughout all Aſia in mockage and deriſion. He vanquiſhed the Perſians, overcame the Medians, ſubdued the Armenians, and ſpoiled all Egypt. He built a Citie and called it Marchantium, wherein he kept all his Priſoners, and enriched the ſame with the ſpoyles of all ſuch Cities as he conquered. It is reported in Hiſtozies, that in his hoſt he had an incredible nuber of thouſands, he uſed comonly to haue xij. hundredeth thouſand vnder him in Campe. When he cam in ſight of his enemies, his cuſtome was to ſet vp three ſortes of Bannions or Tentis: the firſt, was white, ſignifying therby to his Enemies, that if at that ſhe w, they would yelde, there was hope of grace and mercede at hys handes: the next was redde, whereby he ſignified bloude and flame: & laſtly blacke, which betokened utter ſubuerſion & mercileſſe hauocke of all things for their contempt.

pm.ij.

The

A breefe Chronicle.

The same yere Walachia, Transyluania, Moldania and all the Region beyonde the ryuer of Danowe, by procurement of Stephan Vaiuoda their Captaine, sediciously mutyned and stirred vp 202es, against Sigismund. Whereby all men might perceiue and vnderstande, that the same Vaiuoda was the very Authour of the late discomfiture, in procuring the Turkes to come thither.

1398 Cyrisceles (whom some do call Calepine) after the Great Turke his father was taken prisoner and his Host vanquished by Tamburlane the Scythian King, saved himself by flight, & toke vpon him to be king of Turkes, being the spt from Ochoman.

1399 The Turkes (after their king was thus taken & their power daunted) atchieued nothing woorthy of any remembrance vnder this Cyrisceles.

1404 Cyrisceles the kinge, this yere dyed, leauing behind him two Sonnes, Orcannes and Mahomet.

1404 Orcannes throughte the great fauour of the Nobles of Thracia, was appointed Successour to the Crowne, being yet a very young man: but in a conflict at Gazar, not farre from the ryuer Hebrus he was slaine chiefly by the villanie of his owne vnde Moses.

1405 Mahomet the sixte King of Turkes, when his brother was thus rydde out of the way, enjoyed the Crowne alone.

1408 This Mahomet subdued Seruia, Walachia, and a great part of Sclauonic.

1411 Sigismund king of Hungarie, in a battaile against the Turkes foughten in the fieldes of Salumbeze (whiche were somtimes called Philadelphia) was put to the worse, and fledde.

1412 Mahomet imposed greuous and intollerable tributes vpon the Walachians. He translated the Seate royall of chiefe Citie of his Empire out of Bythinia into Thracia, and gaue prerogatiue to Adrianople, preferring it before

Of Saracens and Turkes. 130

soze Prusia. He was the first king of that race that passed the ryuer of Danowe, he subdued Macedonie, and came as farre as the Ionian Sea.

Ammurathes the seuenth King of Turkes, vanquishing Mustapha the sonne of Baiazeth by force of Armes, obtained his fathers kingdome.

This Turke made his first voyage against George the king of Seruia, otherwyse called Rascia, from whom after foure yeeres sieges hee wanne Newmound and Scopia, and miserably afflicted Synderouia. The kinges y. sonnes whom he toke in battaile, he bereft of their eyes and cutte of their priue members. But he married and toke to wife his daughter for her rare beautie and comely personage.

Thessalonica a famous Citie belonging to the Selignioze of Venice was won by the Turkes, who left there no kinde of villanie and spightfull dealing against the Christians vnpractized.

Amurathes besieging Belgrade in Hungarie, losse 10000 of his men and was faine to retire into his owne Countrey after he had in vayne and to his great shame, continued his siege by. monthes.

Iohn Huniades encountered with the Turkes spyingling Hungarie, and them discomfited.

Ladislaus king of Polonie and Hungarie, sending out a power against the Turkes vnder the guydaunce & leading of the same Iohn Huniades had ouer the a noble victorie in the fieldes of Hatzmus, and gaue the Turke to such a streit, that he was faine to condescend to a peace.

This peace made with the Turke, (contrary to league and othe) was violated and broken by the vnadvised procurement and exhortation of Pope Eugenius, whiche breache to the Christians was verrey pernicious and hurtful. For first, the Christians in the Straits of Hellespont lost 17. Gallies. Afterward in a battaile fought at Varna,

A breefe Chronycle

the feeld, aboue xxx. thousand of them slaine, beside a great number drowned in the Bogges. In that battayle was slayne Iulian Cesarine a Cardinal & Legat for the pope, who came thither to procure and incense the Princes to violaction of their League and Oth, and warranted them from daunger: & king Vladislav himself was ther slaine who was merueilous desirous to enterpryse this War. Huniades with much adoe escaped by flight and saved himselfe. The Turke could not haue brought his Party through the Streites of Bosphorus in Thracia to do this mischief, had not the couetous Genowayes winked at the matter and suffered them, hauing in bribe and rewarde, for every Turke, a peece of Golde payed vnto them.

1445 Ammuraches warne the Athmos of Cozynth, and banquished the Grekish Garrisons, together with the emperours Brother of Constantinople, and ouercame with pitifull spoyle all Peloponesus.

1446 The Kinge of Polonie encountred with the Turkes as they invaded Hungary, and obtayned the victoie. The Turkes desirous of reuenge, assembled a bulge power afresh, and renewed Warre. Wherin both parties were lamentably damnyfied, losing welnere 800000 men betwene them. Notwithstanding, the number of 5 Turkes there slayne, was farre greater then of the Chzistians. But the Generall of the Chzistian Armye was there slayne and his head brought to the Kinge of Turkes. In the same battayle also was slayne the sonne of the sayd King of Turkes.

1448 The Hungarians vnder the leadinge of Huniades to the number of 600000 entred into the Turkes Countreies, and ioyning battayle with them, at the firste conflikt, they had the victoie: but in the seconde, they were slayne in maner euery one, except 1000. or ther aboute which by flight saved themselues.

The

Of Saracens aud Turkes 131

The great Turke besieged Croia a citie of Amathia, many Monthes, but by the worthy prowesse of Scanderbeg, he was defeated from his purpose, and with losse of many of his men was sent away packing with a Flea in his eare. 1449.

Ammuraches Emperoure of Turkes dyed, bequeathing his Crowne and kingdome to Mahomet his Son, the 8. King of Turkes. Who (least his Father should be buried alone without company) new at his first entraunce, his owne Brother, and commaunded them to be buried both in one graue. 1450.

The first Warre that this Mahomet toke in hande, was against Scanderbeg. Besieginge Croia with lxxx. thousand men, but he departed away without his purpose to his great shame and repoche, leaving behinde him at the sayde Siege Ballabano one of his chiefe Bassaes. 1451.

The famous and renowned Citie of Athens, the Vniuersitie and furce of all woorthy Artes & Disciplines, was conquered and rased to the ground by this most cruel Tyrant the Turk, who in some places therof digged by the very foundations, for extreme hatred that he bare to learning. He threw all the Bookes and Monuments that he could finde, into dyrtie sinkes and filthiest places in the citie, and to be put to the vilest viles that could be. And if any man seemed to lament it, the same partye was straight wayes put to death. The Castle of Pyram and Munychia was also most furiously rased to the ground. 1452.

This Tyrant the xxir. day of May, after a continuall assault geuen thereto from the ix. of Aprill afoze, that is to say, 50. continual daies, by his innumerable multitude of Turkes, conquered the noble citie of Constantinople, to the unspeakable hindzaunce of all Chzistendome and high advancement of the Turkes Domynion. At the taking of this citie, most horrible propheanation of the Temples was vied. As for Imags which the Turkes

on

them

A breefe Chronicle

themselves cannot abyde, in great scozne and contempte were thowne downe. Among others, Mahomet himself laughing at the superstitious Citezens, in great derision gaped and laughed at the Crucifix, and caused it in scornfull manner to be carped about the Streets with Trumpettes, and wrot upon the head of the said Picture these wordes Hic est Christianorum Deus. This is the God of the Chzistians.

Three dayes together he gave leaue to his outrageous Souldiours, to kill spoyle and rauishes both Wyues, Patrons and Maydes without any reuerence of nature. The citizens some they murdered, some they rolled vpon spits, some they slept the skinnes, and afterwarde hanged them vp to consume with saynyne, of others they put salt into their woundes the more to encrease theyr payne, contending amonge themselves who could devise most straungest kind of new torment, insomuch that the Citty was no Citty, but rather a Slaughterhouse by Shambles of Chzistian bodies. The Emperours himselfe being there slayn, his head was pitched vpon a speare and carped about. At euery dinner and Supper, some of the Emperours Cosens and Nobles of the Countrey were put to death, so longe as anye remained of that ligne. Of the inferiour sort, no day passed wherein he caused not to be put to execution aboue CCC. persons, the residue he gave to his Souldiours.

The exceeding crueltie that they vsed at the winnyng of this Citty, towards al sort of Men, Women & Children, and their spightfull demeanour towards Chzistian religion, it would meane many hart to heere or read of.

Mahomet besieged Belgrad (of some called Alba Graeca) with a hundred and fifty thousand men. The Chzistians assembling their powers together, at the exhortation of John Capistrane, Huniades their chiefe Capitaine and Kingleader slew aboue xl. thousande of his Enemies and

Of Saracens aud Turkes 132.

and put to shamfull sight all the reste of them, in whiche encountre Mahomet himselfe was wounded with an Arrowe. This battaile was fought vpon the 22. day of Iuly.

This Turke ioyninge battaile wth Aslimbey kinge of Persia, who they call by the name of Vuncassane (signifying a worthy & dyad prince) in the first conflict at Euphrates, lost 1. 50. men, but in the second he obtained the victorie.

Corynth was taken by Mahomet.

The Turke wan from the Chzistians the Emprye of Trapezunce, beheading Dauid the Emperour thereof and beside the sayd Emprye and Constantinople also, he took from the Chzistians xii. kingdomes & conquered 200. cities.

The Ile of Malta conquered by Turkes.

The Venetians furnished out a great navy well appointed into Grecia, to recover Corynth, but they returned without bringing their purpose to passe.

The same yere the king of Hungarie recovered Geisa a citie of Bosnia, the which the Turk had now the second time besieged, and hearing of the approche of the Chzistians, he cast 4. great Gunnes or Cannons into the river Drina, & fled trusting better to his legs then to his hands.

Mahomet requiringe the Prince of Mysia to come to speake with him vnder coulozable speeches and pretence of peace, when he had him within his daunger, he sleped and pulled his skinne ouer his eares, and carped his brother and sister about with him in triumph.

The Turke wan a very strong holde in Epyre.

George Castriot (otherwise surnamed Scanderbeg) king of Epyre, discomfited & put to notable foyle the Turks in sundry skirmishes. It is testified of this Scanderbeg being prouoked, he neuer denied to fight, and in fighting neuer turned his back, neither yet was he ever wounded but once wth an Arrow in the foote, neither did he ever set vpon the Turks with more then 6000. horsemen & 3000. footemen. He is constantly said to haue slayne wth his owne handes of Turkes 2000. whome with such violence

pen ij

he

1457.

1458.

1460.

1462.

1463.

1494.

1465.

1466.

A breefe Chronicle

he strake, that many of them he clefte a sunder from the head to the middle.

1468 Mahomet discomfited the Syrians and Egyptians, toke the Cities of Narrantania & Scandolora and fiered them, killing all the Inhabitanes most rufully, and shewing downe the Nobles and Gentlemen from the toppes of Turrettes and high places to breake their neckes.

The same yere he entred into League with Cisme King of India, to whō he gave in mariage a noble Damselfell, out of his owne bzoethelhouse o2 Parferie, with royal giftes and noble magnificence.

1469 Mahomet was put to many afterreales by the power of King Vfuncaffane.

The same yere Nicolas Canalis, Armyzall of the Christian flæte, gaue a mightie ouerthzow to Mahomet on the Sea, and slue two thousand Turkes.

At the same time many Christians were taken and led into captiuitie by the Turkes out of diuerse quarters.

1470 The Turke sent 400 Sayle and 120000 men into the Isle of Euboea vnder the leauing of Omar one of hys Bassaes, in which enterprize and inuasion he lost almost 40000 of his men: notwithstanding, after xxx. dayes he toke it, pytching the Italian Souldiours vpon Woates & stakes, and shewing all kind of horrible crueltie and violent rape vpon the Inhabitanes.

The same yere the Turkes army entred into Hungarie spoyling and robbing as farre as Zagabria, and carried away with them 10000 Prisoners.

In the same yere also they inuaded Dalmatia, Foriuli, and Styria, and baried great booties of men and Cattell.

1471 The King of Portugall, passing the Gaditane Sea, recovered many Cities in the borders of Mauritania from the Turke, and laid them to his owne dominions.

1472 King Vfuncaffane hauing the vpperband of 2 Turkes, wonne from them sundry Cities, whereby he purchased

Of Saracens and Turkes. 133

to himselfe a perpetuall fame ouer all the East.

Nicholas Throne the same yere ioynd the Venetian flæte with the Armie of the King of Parchia against the Turke.

Vfuncaffane in a skirnish vanquished and put to flight 3000 of the Turkes Army.

The same yere 2 Turke entring into Hungarie with a maine power, spoiled al the Cities nere the water side.

The Persian King and the Turke ioyning battayle nere to the River Euphrates: the Turke had the victorie, and tooke of his Enemies 6800 of whom in his retourne homeward at euery staying place and Tent pitching, he commaunded euery day five hundred to be cut in peeces with a sword, and then cast them out (like dogs) vnburied, filling all the Countrey of Armenia with this loathsome spectacle of dead Carcasses.

In a part of the Countrey that lyeth by the river Ilter called Muldauia and Walachia, the Turkes had an ouerthzow and were slayne by Stephan the Palatine of Muldauia, Forre Turkeish Bassaes were beere taken and xxxij. Ensignes.

Mathias King of Hungarie, at the River of Saue won a strong Fozte from the Turkes to his high praise and commendation.

The same yere Capha, a Colonie of the Genowayes in the coast of the Sea Euxine, was by treason deliuered up to the Turke.

This yere dyed King Vfuncaffane, who had vnder his gouernment the Persians, Partians, Medians and almost all the East beside. After whom, succeeded his eldest sone: who putting his other bzothers to death, reigned alone.

The same yere the Turkes prattized much Pyzacie in Nicolia, to the great blemishing and detrimēt of that Citie.

An. 19

A breefe Chronycle

- 1478 A great multitude of Turkes were overcome in Mysia. The Venetians made league with the Turke: Chalcis was by force of Armes subdued, and Scodra by subtil practyse gotten and persuaded to yelde. They promysed to paye hym, yeerely 8000 Crownces, conditionally that their Nauigation and traffique ouer Pontus myght bee open for their Marchauntes as befoze it had bene.
- 1479 Mahomet sent a great Flaue into Puell, and he himselfe went with an Armie into Hungarie, and brought out of both places a great multitude of Christian Prisoners. And afterward by force subdued the Isles Leucadia, Neritus, Cephalenia and Zacynth.
- 1480 Mahomet went with an Armie into Egypt to cōquere Alexandria and at home made preparation for all things needefull for his expedition to Rhodes, which he now minded out of hande to besiege, and had framed his plat to which way to attempt it.
- 1481 This Mahomet by Mesich his Generall (a Bassa) besieged Rhodes, and beate the same with iiii. Flaues most terribly. But the same was so manfully defended, that hee was fayne to his great reproche and shame to departe and leaue his Siege, which he had there continued lxxxix. dayes, in which while he losse of his men which were slaine out of hande ix. thousande beside xv. thousande which were wounded. The Maister of the Rhodes at this Siege for the Christians was the haliaunt Peter Dabufon.
- The same yere the Turke with a great Flaue invaded Puell and by Acomato one of his Capitaines, toonne Otronto, a goodly large and populous Citie standing vppon the Sea, and put all the Inhabitauntes to the Sworde.
- In this yere also 6000 Turkes were slaine at the Citie Mantinea in the kingdome of Lacedemon.

311

Of Saracens and Turkes. 134

In this yere also, this raging Belhounde Mahomet the Great Turke, first of all others tooke vppon him the name of Emperour. Hee wanne from the Christians two flourishing and Noble Emppires; Constantinople; and Trapezuncer; twelue Christian Kingdomes; and CC. cities. After which sundry conquestes he yeldeo by his blasphemous soule, and payed his debt to nature, to the great reioysing of well of his enemies as of his owne people, because of the horrible & unspeakable crueltie, with out respect atwell to frendes as foes, most rigorously shewed. Being againe in death, hee was buried in the city of Bagdad.

Baiazeth the bigg. Emperour of Turkes, appealing all chille dissensions and domesticall discorde at home, chased his brother Zizime out of all Turkie, and was himselfe enthroned in the Emptre.

The same yere Ferdinand King of Naples, sent his sonne Alphonsus with an Armie, who recovered from the Turkes the Citie Otronto, before wonne by Mahomet.

Also this yere Iohn Castriotte the Sonne of Scanderbeg assembled a power and recovered his inheritance that was by force taken from his father by Mahomet.

The same yere also Stephen Varneda and King Matthias, toonne from the Turke the higher countrey of Mycia, which now is called Boshnia.

Baiazeth often toyning battails with the Sultan of Egypt had the troope, and in the ende was glad to make a league with him.

The Turkes invaded and toonne Walachia, and Zizime brother to this Baiazeth the Great Turke, being an exile in Rhodes whither he fled for feare of his sayd Turke his brother, was this yere sent to Rome to Pope Innocent the viii. And after a certeyne tyme of abode there, was paysoned together with Alexander the Pope his Sonne.

Fer

A breefe Chronycle

- 1490 Ferdinand king of Spaine with x. p. Horsemen and fifty thousand footemen, wan from the Saracen Moors, the kingdome of Granado, and chased them utterly out of that Countrey beyond the Sea.
- 1492 This Turke Baiazeth with a great power both by Sea and Land invaded the Inhabitaunts of the Isles in Greece called Ceraunij, and all the free Corporations of Epyro, and them subdued to his Turkish Emperre.
- The same yere Marchias King of Hungary, conquered a strong Holme from the Turkes called Salagrum, whereby his Countrey lyued in moze quietnesse and out of feare.
- 1493 A mightye Armye was sent into Hungarie under the leading of Cadume Bassa, by whom were slayne vii. p. Hungarians: and for testimony of this people and power, they sent many Christian mens Heades with their noses cut of and in both hands were disfigured, to Constantinople.
- 1494 The Turkes rushing into Croacia, were put to flight by Maximilian.
- 1498 The Turke warred against the Venetians, spoilinge with fire and sword the Countrey Dalmanas, & burnede alway to him great prayes. In February also he commaunded about 4000. men to be beheaded, because he could not carry them away with him by reason of a great deluge of the river there. The Citie of Venice for dread of hym was in great perplexitie and feare.
- 1499 The Turkes wanne this yere, Modona and Corona, two cities of Peloponnesus.
- 1500 The Citie Mechon was by the Turkes wonne from the Venetians upon St. Laurence daye. Baiazeth commaunded the Byshop of that place to be beheaded in his sight, and killed the Townesmen every one, and for the most part consumed all the Houses with fire. By the

Of Saracens and Turkes. 135

misfortune also, the sayd Venetians lost Naupactum and Dyrrhachium.

Certayne Kings & Princes of Christendome, friends and savorers of the Venetian state, toynd their Power with the Venetian Flæte (ouer the which Benedict Pisaura was Admirall) and spoiled the Isles of Aegina and Zacynth, invaded Leucas and Cephalenia, toke the Ile of Nericus (at this day called Saint Maures Islande) and rescued Nauplia.

The Turke greatly fearing his owne state, by reason of the bzute and rumour y went vnto Elias the Prophet of Persia, commaunded about C. C. Houses in Constantinople with all the Inhabitaunts therein to be burnt. This Prophet was in such credit and estimation among the People, that about C. L. thousande men leaned to his Sect and folowed after hym in Campe. His Tentres were exceeding rich and gorgeous, and all thinges among them were common.

The same yere, the Turke entred into League and concluded peace with the king of Hungary and the Duke of Venice.

The King of Spaine in Mauritania Casariensis, wan Mayneport from the Saracenes.

The Sophie of Persia, vanquished, chased, and slew the Turkes in Asia.

Grane a populous and wealthy citie of Africa this yere was wonne by the Spaniards.

The Spaniards by force of Armes conquered Bugia in Africa.

Zelime youngest Sonne to Baiazeth the great Turke rebelliously and most unnaturally lay in wayt to kill his olde Father, expelled him out of his kingdome in his olde dayes, with all his Brothers and kinsmen. At length he caused his Brothers and their Childzen to be strangled

Do

and

A breefe Chronycle

and by a certayne Jew, whom for that intent he had hired, he caused his sayd father to be poysoned.

1512. This Zelime by the factious election of his disordered Souldiours and affectionate Rakehellies, was chosen and annointed the ix. Emperoure of Turkes.

1513. Acomathes the brother of Zelime, being ayded by the Persians, warred against his Brother, but Fortune so frowned on him, that he was strangled.

1514. Zelime concluding a peace & renewinge League with the Venetians and Hungarians, made sharpe Warre vpon Ismael & king of Persia, & him nere to a towne called Chalderan, banquished and put to flight: And toke Taurum the chiefe Citie of his kingdome (somtime called Artaxata) without any resistauce or bloodshed.

1515. Hee waged fresh warres against Aladule Kinge of Cappadocia, and taking his chiefe Capitaine in the chase, cut him thorow by the head, and sent his head to Venice for a Trophie or signe of his victorie.

1516. This bloudy Zelime discomfited Camp for the Sultane of Egypt with all his power, and due the Sultane hymselfe in the chase. And folowing his good fortune and prosperous successe in this battayle, conquered and annexed to his Emprye, Alkaire, and Alexandria two goodly embattled Cities, and all Egipe beside. He also tooke Damascus, the large and renowned Citie of Syria.

1517. Hee made a passage or Wydge of Shippes over the riuer Nilus, to the intent hee might pursue and coape with Tomombey the new Sultan of Egypt. Whom by treason hee tooke and after all kindes of most cruell tormentes and spightfull contumelies, commanded hym to be hanged.

1518. Charles Kinge of Spayne draue out of his Realme the Marranes, which were a remnaunt of the Saracens and due welnere of the Barbarians. 40000.

1520. Zelime the Great Turke was this yere (as he had well

Of Saracens and Turkes. 136

well deserued) murdered in that place, where befoze he had mooste vnnaturallie and rebelliouslie persecuted his Father. After him succeeded his Sonne Solymán, the xii. Emperour of Turkes.

This Solymán conquered the Citie Belgrade, a mooste strong Buttresse and Garrison for Christendome, and wan diuers other Castles and strong Holds in Hungary.

He also belleged the Ile of Rhodes with a shauye of foure hundred shayle and a mightie multitude of men. He beganne the siege in the later end of Iune, and toke it vpon Christmas day next folowing to his great shame & dishonour of al christian Princes. The knights of his same Ile valyauntly a great while defended it, & often skirmished with hym, but in the ende after many notable overthrowes for want of ayde and power they yielded.

Lewys Kinge of Hungarie desired by his Ambassadors, aid of the Princes of Germany, against the Turke inuading his Countrey and Kingdome, whiche they appointed to sende, but it came to late. For the Turke was already come, wherefoze king Lewys in his owne person, leading his whole power against hym, encountered with hym in battayle, wherein hee was overcome, and thinking to haue saued himselfe by flight, was drowned in certayne bogges or fennes both horse and man. Many worthy Gentlemen in this Battayle were slayne to the great weakeninge of that noble Kingdome. The chiefe Citie of the Realme called Buda, was sacked and spoiled: and the noble Librarie, of Kinge Matthias bitterly consumed with fire.

The knights of the Rhodes planted themselves against the Turkes in the Ile of Malta.

The same yere Solymán came agayne into Hungary, belleged the second tyme the strong fortresse of Bude, but seeing he could not according to his minde by force win it, he perswaded the Defendauntes by certayne offers and

Do is

conditi-

A breefe Chronycle

conditions to yelde it into his handes. From thence he marched to Vienna a noble Citie of Austrich, and vpon the xij day of September gyved the same about with a most terrible Siege, beate it with Dvynance and shoke the walles with most hydeous noyse of roaring Canons. But thzough the courage of the defendantes, he lost many of his Souldiours, and being bzought into a vtter despaire of any god successe, he trusted by his trinkets and in flying maner truded away toward his owne Countrey with all spæde that coulde be, fearing least the Emperour and other Princes had folowed at beeles after him. During this siege, he haried great booties out of y Countrey thereabout, and caryed away many thousande Prisoners. He cast out young Virgins & aunient Patronesses naked, and pitched little Childzen vpon stakes and poles. In his Armie he had a hundzeth and fortye thousand men: whereof (partly in this Siege of Vienna and partly in their flight) perished for famine and colde, the number of. lxxx. thousand. The Citie was most valiantly defended by Philip of Bauary Earle Palatine of the Rhine bzother to the Palsgraue; a young Gentleman in yeres but of noble courage, with the Lord William Røgendorf and Nicolas Erle of Salme and with them onely xx. M. Almeynes and two M. hozsmen. In his iourney thzough Austrich, the Turke used vnspæakeable crueltie, of some he cut of their noles, some he put out their eyes, of some he cut of their priuy members, of women they cut their pappes, Virgins they rauished, and of women great with childe they repped their bellies and bzent the childzen: beside this, all along as they went, they bzent Coznes, Trees, Houses and all that was combustible, to make the countrey desolate.

Solyman with CC. M. armed souldiours assauleth the Castle of Guntz in Hungarie, geuing thereto. xij. terrible assautes. Which Castle was valiantly defended by

Of Saracens and Turkes. 137

by a noble Gentleman named Nicolas Iuryze. At length it was surrendzed vnto him, not as wonne by force, but as yelded by composition. The great Turke himselfe hearing that the Emperour Charles was coming agaynst him with. lxxx. thousande footemen and. 30000. well appointed hozsmen, of Germaines, Italians and Spanyardes, beside the Hozsmen of Hungarie, thought the Countrey woulde be too boate for hym to staye anye longer, and therewithon fledde homeward thzough the Hillishe Downes of Norica and with great booties retourned home, without downg any thing woorthy of memozie.

Solyman yet againe meant to haue an other slinge at Hungarie, and to scourge the Kingdomes of Africa. Wherevpon he sent one Corradine Barbarossa Captayne of his Flaue into Africa against the King of Tunicie. Whom he bzawe out of his Kingdome, and deposited from hys Crowne. And into Hungarie he sent Lewys Gritte, Bassard sonne of Andrew Grytte Duke of Venyce, to expulse and bzynge out thence Vainode. But Meilane Vainode wyninge the Cytye of Medewisch, which the saide Lewys Grytte before had gotte into hys possession, setwe both hym and all his Armie: And cutte hys Childzen into peces, before they fathers eyes.

Charles the fiftie with a great Flaue sailed into Africa, and restozed the King of Tunicie to his Crowne againe, and deliuered out of miserable captiuitie about the number of. xx. thousand Christian Prisoners.

The same yere Taurus a Citie of Persia was taken by the Turke. Where the Turkishe Souldiours luying in carelesse securitie, were sodainly set vpon by Tahames King of Persia, and. xx. thousande of them slayne. The Persians caryed thence manye spoyles and the Great Turkes

1534

1535

1532

A breefe Chronicle.

Turkes Concubines, to the great shame and reproche of their Enemies.

Solyman assembled out of the Countreies of Pontus & Propontis, C. l. Gallies. lxxx. Brigandines, & Foystes, and CC. lxx. other vesselles of diuers sortes wherewith he invaded Corfica an Ile belonging to the Seigniozie of Venice, and it besieged the space of .x. dayes. When setting the Suburbes on fier, & making great spoyle of the countrey beside killing or else taking Prisoners, many of the Inhabitauntes, he departed thence, and waisted the Ile of Zacynch and Cythera. Hee conquered and layde euen with the grounde, the Ile of Agina, subdued Paros, and made Naxos Tributarie. He sent into Puell, the greater and better part of his Flaue, which were in number ten thousand picked souldiers and 99. of his stoutest Voysemen, which harped and spoiled all the Coast of the Egeerhene Sea. The flæte of the Emperour, the Pope, and Venetians ioyning together at the first, through discorde and ambition of the Captaines among themselves were disseuered and scattered a sunder.

Inuasion and Roades were made into Scyria by the Martyloys, a rude sort of Dependantly Turdens, altogether geuen to Pyllery and Theft: but by the valiantnesse of the Countrey Inhabitauntes they were repulsed.

The same yere throughte Treason of Duke Calcian the Chyistians had an ouerthrowe at the handes of the Turkes in Sauia.

The Venetians entred a Truce with the Turke, by paying vnto him thre hundred thousand Crownes, and yelding vp into his handes the Townes of Neapolis and Maluasia in the bozders of Macedonia.

The Towne of Newcastle in Dalmacia (wherein was a Garrison of Spanyshe and Germaine Souldiours) was this yere conquered and sacked by the Turkes and all the Inhabitauntes and Souldiours therein (according

Of Saracens and Turkes. 138

ding to their vsuall custome) put to the sword. The Venetians all this while wynted at the matter, in whom it lay to haue holpen this outrage.

After the death of Iohn Vaiuoda, who committed the ouersight and tutorship of his young Sonne to his Cousen Georgius Monachus, it chaunced y Ferdinand leuied an Army to recouer his Landes & right in Hungarie. Whō Monachus in the behalfe of the Infant resisted. At length the matter betwene them being brought to a Warre and conuention, for the quieting of all stryfe, it happned among Ferdinando his men, suddenly a Dagge to be hard goe of, which by the heate of the daie (as it is thought) discharged of it owne accorde. But Monachus iudging that it was shotte at him, charged Ferdinando with great iniurie, saying that from that time, he would neuer be leaue the promyses of Chyistians. And vpon this rath suspicion, sent to the Turke, desiring hym to come into Hungarie with his power to ayde him, who glad to haue this occasion, came speedely with a great Army and discharging the Hoaste of Ferdinando from the Siege of Buda, seized the Cytie into his owne handes and to his owne vse, commaunding the young Infant and his mother to folowe after his Campe. When entred he himselfe and tooke possession of the Castle, and waime also Pestum a Citie ryght ouer agaynst Buda, well stored with Ordnance and Munition. At the same time he also won Stridon, and the Towne called Quinqueclefix or Fynssenkynken he raled and made leauell with the grounde.

At the wynterpage of Buda, two Companies yeldinge themselves to the Turke vpon promyse of lyfe and limme, were first by him commaunded to put of their Armour, the to put it on again, & to ranke themselves in battaile aray, after the Chyistian fashon which they readily accomplishing according to his comaundment, & he riding about the

A breefe Chronicle.

the banks to view and behold them, at length had them put of their Armure againe: whiche done, certaine of the tallest and strongest he picked out, the residue he commaunded his Souldiours comminge behinde, to be in peeces with their Swordes. Of the other which he had chosen out, some he set for Sparks, or Buttes to be shot at: and some he appointed to his two Sonnes to slay with their Falchions, and to trye their strength, whether of them coulde geue the deeper wounde, or (as they feared it) strike the sayzer blowe, that most blood might flow and gush out of their bodies.

1542.

Ioachim Marques of Brandeburge Prince Electour, was appoynted with a great power to goe into Hungarie to recouer Buda and other peeces from the Turke. At the first, he seemed so forward and couragious, as though he woulde haue conquered the whole World. But his great heate in shoyte space so flaked that he was full glad to be discharged of his office againe, before any wronge were offered him, and with shame ynough retourned home agayne. Whose cowardise the Turkes perceiuing, thought to shew hym some cast of their office before his departure, and set vpon the right winge of his Armys, and thence tooke 500. Duchmen prisoners. Whom in derision they horribly mangled and disfigured: and so sent them throughe Grecia to bee witnesses of their viciozitie. The kinde of their punishment was this: first, they thrust them cleane throughe the right Arme, with an yron redde boate, to make them euer after vnbable to labour and waifare, secondly their heades were shauen to the very Sculles lyke Ponkes or Friers, and thirde their paye members were cut of, to make them vnfrutefull for propagation of Childzen. Notwithstandinge Maurice Duke of Saronie in his expedition, shewed himselfe a gentleman of haulte courage and was lyke to haue bene taken prisoner.

His

Of Saracens and Turkes. 139

This yere the Emperoure Charles, spending hymselfe somewhat late in 8 yere with a goodly flauy into Mauritania Cæsarientis against Barbarossa to recouer Argiers, & staying (as some say) somewhat long at Luke, to conferre wth the Pope, by force of tempest & contrary Windes, suffered a lamentable shipwreck, and losse a great number of his goodly Shippes with the Dynaunce and Vaylliments of Warre that were within them. The Emperoure himselfe by force of weather was cast vpon the Balear Islands. In this expedition the Germanes valiantly quitte themselves in skirmish against the Barbarians in the Emperours behalfe, but the Italians recyled and fled back.

1542

Truce was for a certeyne time taken with the Turke: which to both parties with longe warres wearied, was welcome and very acceptable.

1543

Sigismund King of Poleland, by Breuitz one of his Capitaynes, conquered and raised a stronge Fortresse: which the Turke had buyt nere to the Marches of his Realme and Kingdome.

1546

Mustapha the Turkes eldest Sonne, thought he tarried too longe, if he shoulde be kept from the Crowne till his father were dead, wherefore he incensed the Egyptians to take part with him, and stirred by the Persians to make sharpe Warre vpon Solyman his father.

1547

Solyman the Turke with a huge army, marched against Tolcha King of Persia, where the Turke in battayle had a great ouerthrow and lost many of his men in Persia. The Tartarians which were comminge to ioyne their powers with him for his defence, were slayne and spoiled in the lesse Armenia.

1548

The same yere, one Curculey a Turke the Pryate with twenty Galleyes and Forsses, contrarie to the League and truce practized muche Pryacie and rouerge about the Coastes of Sicilie and Campania, todayntye

pp

tur

A breefe Chronicle

surprizinge the Inhabytantes, and thence carryed away incredible spoyle.

1548. The same yere the Saracenes in Barbaria byynge newe sedicious bypazes, were by the valyauntnesse of Sektian and Albane two of the Emperours Capitaines repressed: who also deliuered Portugall and Spaine from their malicious inuasion.

1549. The Turke intending to make amendes for the late ignomyne and foyle that he had receiued, leuyed a newe Armye againste the Persians: and firste, he inuoyed bys Souldiours by augmenting their wages, and after ward, by his Ambassadors, insinuated himselfe to all his confederates and confirmed such Leagues as were betwene them. But he lost of this is very well appoynted Armye in this iourney by famine and plague a great multitude. The plague also beinge very boate and raiginge in Constantinople (which Citie in his absence, he had strengthened with a Garrison of a hundzeth Galleyes) consumed well nere lxx. thousand persons.

1550. In the beginning of this yere, (whiche was a yere of Iubylie) Solyman was repoised (but vntreulye) to bee dead: which mercilesse Treaunt foze afflicted the people of God, the space of xxx. yeres.

The same yere the Emperoure Charles the fift, by the Viceroy of Sicile, conquered and won the Citie Africa, from whence he brought 8000 prisoners, and braxe out the Archpyzate Dragute, King therof, who fled to the Turke.

1551. The Turkes after they had in vaine for a time besieged the Castle of Malta, toke the Citie of Tripplisa Pozte of Barbarie.

1553. Solyman at this time caused his eldest Sonne Mustapha to be strangled in a Bowstringe, by his dumbe men ministers of Murthre & byzured, he himself being present and looking on, for suspicion of treason layd to his charge.

And

Of Saracens aud Turkes 140

And there was a truce taken betwene hym and Ferdinando king of Romanes.

After which act committed, he woulde haue geuen to another of his sonnes named Gianger, the Treasure, boyle, Armour Ornament and Pouince of his layne Brother: but Gianger for very sorowle of his Brothers death raging against his Father, calling hym wycked dog, traitour and murtherer, and bidding pby upon him, refused his offers and drawinge out his towne Dagger presently thrust himselfe through the body and dyed.

The Turkes Army came into Scyria, and wanne the townes of Coppia, Capenisuar, and Baboza. And attempting to winne Sigetum, they could not with all their power byzinge it to passe. Whereupon they departed homeward, but first, they spered Baboza, Sanmartine, Gerofgall, Selia, San Laurence and Caliangre.

Philip Kinge of Spaigne furnished out an flauye to conquere Tripplisa, the Ale Gerbe: which flauye arguing in Gerbe and ioyninge battaile with the Turkes, was put to a threwoode afterdeale & ouerthow. For there were slaine of them out of hande to the number of xviii. thousande persons. The Turkes in this confide toke xxvii. Galleyes, one Foyst of foze, and fouretene great Hulkes.

In the beginning of the same yere the Turkes wanne a strong holde in Hungary named Filech: and afterwarde a Truce was taken betwene the Emperour Ferdinando and Solyman the great Turke so long as Ferdinando lyued.

The great Turke, sent his Ambassadors to Ferdinando, who from the great Turke his Ambassador presented vnto the said Emperour a goodly Tenet richlye trapped and 4. Camelles with sundrye Chyzilian Prisoners.

Maximilian now Emperoure, by the Lozde Lazarus Swendy his Generall, conquered & beat downe a strong holde

1556.

1560.

1564.

A breefe Chronycle

holbe & Foxt called Tochay, beſieging to Iohn Vainoda which was egerly defended by the Turkes.

1564 King Philip ſent Garzas Captaine of his Gallies and Army all of thoſe Seas with a goodly Flaue to wyne a ſtronge Caſtle belonging to the Turkes called Del Peuol de Velez, ſtanding vpon the coaſt of Africa, from whence Turkiſh Pyrates were often wont to infeſt the Spaniſhe Seas and take ſuche as traueiled that waye. Which in .vi. dayes they toke, ſo that y Turkes deſending it, in the ſtill time of the night fled away.

1565 Solymán beſieged the Ile of Malta, wonne the Caſtle of S. Helme, but not able to winne the reſt, he left all and departed with great loſſe of his men.

1566 Solymán with a huge power entred into Hungarie, and beſieged Sigech and Iula. And there dyed, the .liij. of September, leaving behinde him ſo Herye to all his dominions and Kingdomes, his ſonne Selyme, now Emperour of Turkes. Whoſe tyrannie and rage God ſo his mercyes take, inhibite and qualeſſe, that he uſe not his power to the deſtruction and overthrowe of Chriſtendome, which with ciuile diſcord withiut ſelfe is at this preſent piteouſly rent aſunder and moſt dangerously diſmembred. In this ſiege the rather to allure his ſouldiours to ballaunt enterprizes, he made proclamation, that who ſoever brought to him or to his ſonne in lawe Mechmet Baſſa the head of a Dygethian ſouldiour ſhould haue in reward .x. Duckettes, and after that rate accordingly ſo many heades as they brought. Beſide diuerſe other cauſes y vehemently moued him to conquire this ſtrong piece, this was one, & none of the leaſt, ſo one of the Turkes Captaines named Begen comming out of Turke toward Fynſenkyrken or Quinquedecſix into Hungarie with .1000. freſhe Hoſemen, was encountred by the Erle Seryne Captaine of Sygech in the night, who toke from him 8 Camels, 50 Moples, 60 Horſes, and ſix Wagons laden with Treafure and alſo gotte y redde

Of Saracens and Turkes. 141

y redde Gypſons, with a whole piece of riche clothe of Golde, and a goodly Jewell. This Captaines Horſe was betrayed moſt richly. The ſemell of the ſadle & backe part was couered ouer with plate of ſyne Arabick wezth, and the reſt of the ſadle beſide the ſitting place was plated with ſiluer and gilt. The ſeate of the ſadle was couered with purple Weluet, the Trappers and byble beſet with ſmall Turkeys and Rubyes. Which horſe and furniture, was ſent by Erle Seryne to the Emperour to Vienna. The Captaine Begen (although the Erle Seryne would ſatne haue ſaued him and taken him aliue, yet becauſe the Ianizzaries fought ſo egerly to deliuer him, he was forced to kill both him and them. From this Begen, the Erle got .rb. thouſand Turkiſhe & Hungariſh Duckates, which ſhould haue payd the Turkiſhe ſouldiours in Fynſenkyrken.

This ballaunt Gentleman at the Siege of this Foxtreſſe was ſlaine, whoſe death greatly diſcourage all his company. The Turke himſelfe although he dyed in the Campe at this Siege, certayne dayes beſoze the foxtreſſe were taken, yet by the ſubtile policie and wonderfull ſilence of Mechmet Baſſa his ſonne in lawe, his death was kept ſecrete and vnknoſen till the Hold was taken ſo diſcourage his ſouldiours. In ſomuch that the ſayde Mechmet Baſſa, prinely cauſed Solymans Doctor of Phyſicke to be executed and put to death, leaſt he ſhoulde haue blabbed out his death. At this Siege were ſlaine thre or foure Baſſas & 18000. Turkes.

The Arabians and certeyne other Countreyes began in the beginning of the raigne of this Selyme to rebell againſt him, whom he quickly appeaſed & brought vnder obediēce. And made a league wth the King of Perſia.

After this, although the Turke had entred in league with the Venetians, yet now laying title & challenge to y Ile of Cyprus, he ſent his Ambaſſapour to Venice ſtate.

pp. 19.

15 and

A breefe Chronycle

ly and malapertly to demaund surrendry of the same vnto him. Which saucy request being not graunted, he contrary to league, othe, & promyse, first sent out Hali Bassa with 80 Gallies thither to transport Souldiours, Ammunition, freshe victuall & other necessaries. Then were appointed as chiefe Generall two Lordes of his Princiue Council, Mustapha Bassa, and Piali Bassa, whiche with their mayne power landing in Cypres first wonne the Citie Nicosia but not without greate slaughter and effusion of bloude on both partes.

1571

The Citie Famagosta was most terrible besieged and fire times cruelly assaulted and righte balliantly by the Christians defended so long as their power, victuall, powder and shot remayned. But the want of these thinges & the state of their Waymures being by Canon shot beaten downe & perished, caused the right ballaunt & honorable Sig. Bragadino Lord Gouvernor of the Citie & others of the Venetian Nobilitie there, to yeld vp theselues and the Citie vpon some honorable condicions. That is to wit, that they might depart with their lynes Armour & goods, fine pieces of Ordnance, thre of their best Horses and safe passage from thence to Candie with theirown Gallies: and last of all that the Grecians inhabiting in that Island, might dwell there quietly and enioy their goods and possessions peaceably and still reterne their Christian Religion without either hurt or contradiction. At these requestes and Articles, Mustapha the Turkish Generall graunted and subscribed vnto with his own hand, but the cursed Caytif spake one thing with mouth & thought another in heart, for the 15 of August, the said Sig. Bragadino (vpon trust of this Bassa his promyse) accompanied with sundry other Lordes Gentlemen and Souldiours, came forth of their Holde and went vnto the Pavillion of Mustapha, with the keyes of the Citie: of whom at the first they were courteously enterternyed and caused to sit downe by

Of Saracens and Turkes. 142

by him, discoursing with them of sundry matters and drawing them fro one tale to another, till at length picking a surmyfed quarrel and specially to Sig. Bragadino sodainly commaunded them all to be pynnyoned and to be layde bounde one by one in the market place, and in hys presence there to be betwen in peeces. As for Sig. Bragadino, he first commaunded his eares to be cut of, and most vilely to be stretched a long vpon the grounde, while Mustapha talked and blasphemously demaunded of him, where his Christ was that he helped him no better. Then he led him to all the breaches of the Citie, making him to carrie at once two baskettes of rubbish and earth, th'one on hys backe and th'other in his hand stauelyke to every sundry battry, being enforced also and commaunded to kysse the grounde as often as he passed by him. After this, he was ledde to the Sea side where being set in a Chayze, he was towynched vp and fastened to the maineyard of a Galley, and hysed by with a Crane so high that all the Christian Souldiours and Slaves in the Haven already shipped might behold, and was after ward let downe againe, and vpon the Pyllorie in the market place most cruelly sleyed quicke. After which most sauage tyrantie, his skinne was stuffed with straw and hanged vpon the Botwyt of a forke to be caried along the coastes of Syria, that al y Port towntes might behold and vnderstand who he was. The Turkish Army at this Siege of all sortes were in number 200 thousande persons. In 79 dayes (all which time the Battry still continued) 140 thousande yron pelletes were shot into the Citie, numbred and sene.

The Christian Army being in number 207 Gallies, 6 Galeazes beside a great nuber of Pynnyesses and other Shippes, and 20. thousande tall Souldiours, of Spayne, Italy and Germanie beside the Labourers and Holwers, wherof was chiefe General Don Iohn de Austria toke the Sea at Messana from thence sayling to Cortyra, & so

1571

A breefe Chronicle.

to Cephalonia seeking the Turkes: where being out of Candy enformed of the miserable taking and cruell dealing at Famagosta, were further geuen to vnderstande, that the Turkes lay at Anker in the Gulph of Velapant. Spreading themselves thitherward, the Turkes were in a toly ruffe, marueyllyng, that the Christians durst so fondly hazard themselves vnto certayne death, and making full reckenyng so to afflict and crush the Christian power at that time, that they should neuer be able afterwarde to withstand the more. But they reckened before their God, and God gaue the victory. For there were taken, burnt, and sunk of the Turkish Gallies, Gallots and Byrgandines 230. There were slayne of the Turkes 30. thousand, beside a great number taken prisoners: and about xiiii. thousand Christians that had bene kept in lothsome captiuitie, were set at libertie, by making their chaynes to be reuenged of their extreme slauerie, to helpe the Christians when the Turkes should begin to goe to wreck. The chiefe byunt of this conflict was vpon the 6. day of October, and lasted foure houres, but the slaughter and chase continued all day from morning tyll night, insomuch that the Sea seemed redde with blood: for none escaped thence aloue saving 40. Gallies which fled at the first beginning. The Christians lost seauen Gallies and were slayne betwene the number of vi. or vii. thousande.

The wind and Sunne was on the backs of the Christians, and full in the faces of the Turkes, whiche greatly helped them at this pinch: and furthermore the stormes of the Turks Gallies were so high, that they ouershotte our men, which made them to hasten to grappling: there beside a great sort of lanyzaries and continous Turkes, their Bassa was slaine.

This yere the seauenth of October, the noble and valyaunt Prince Don Iohn De Austria with 125 Gallies and 40. great Shippes was sent by Phylip King of Spayne

Of Saracens aud Turkes 143

Spayne to take and set order in the kingdome of Tunice, where was great ruffling and burly burly for the State. He therfore taking Ship at Lauagnana, had the wynd so fauorable, that by none the next day he arriued at Golecta. Afterward there folowed and came to him Marcellus Auria with 29. well trimmed Foyles, and the Duke of Sessia with 14. of the Popes gallies. The Turkes in Tunice for dread of his puissance (whom to their cost not long before they had tryed) fled out of Tunice, some to Carauana and 400. of them to Bisana, sometime called Vtica: whom the Bisanes would not receiue nor succour: whereupon after many boat woordes on either party, they fell together by the eares among themselves. The Bisanes (to be the stronger in that bykeringe) vnclogged and bychained 150. Christian prisoners whom the Turkes had bled for Gallye Slaves, and them furnished with Weapon and armure. By whose help and meane specially, the Bisanes got the vpperhande and slue many of the Turkes. Which done, Don Iohn (hauing the goodwyl of the Townesmen) sent thither Sig. Salazara the Spaniarde, to take possession of the Towne, and to sweare the Inhabitantes to be true obedient Subiectes to Kinge Philip. When landing his Army within foure miles of Tunice, he sent 2500. Footemen to the citie, where they found no body to resist them but onely 200 Moores in the Castle, who sayde that they kept the same to the vse of Amidas their King. Whom Don Iohn sent prisoner with his wife and Children into Sicile, because he had bene cause of great discorde and faction in that Countrie, and (dispossessing the lawfull beyzes thereof) had violently usurped the same and procured the Turkes to come thither. In whose come he appoynted young Mulcasses, who swore to be true Vassall vnto Kinge Phylip and to bolde his Crowne of hym by Homage, whom the Citie, with a goodly preale of obediunce receiued & gladly

A breefe Chronicle

1574. lye seemed to admit for their Soueraigne. Duer the Castle of chiefe Fort of the Citie he appoynted Sig. Serbellane Capitaine.

The iij. of February 200 footemen and 150 Horsemen of the Garrison of the sayd Sig. Serbellane, looking also into the fort helpe 4000 Mozes, yssued out of their Fort and encountred with 1500 Turkes and 3000 Arabians, which robbed and spoiled the goods of the Tunicians and greuously molested them. In which conflict, the falsehearted Mozes revolting and refusing to fight, there was taken 150 Christians and two Gunnes.

Still the Turkes stamping and staring for rage to see the Spaniards beare rule and authoritie in those quarters, priuely in the night the 21. of February surprized Canisum, killing therein and slaying about a thousand persons, and after they had utterly burnt the towne then to the Castle gate, they retrayed backe to hence they came. The Garrison in the Castle to the great griefe all this while beholding this outrageous dealing, durst not once adventure to cope with them for feare of losing all, because they were in number farre fewer then they.

This yeare the Venetians entred into league with Solymne the Great Turke, for confirmation wherof, they sent Sig. Francesco Barbaro to Constantinople, & conditions wherof were, & eyther partie should still keepe & enjoy so much as they had already in their several possessions, saving that the Venetians promised the delivery of Sapotum and resignation of all their tytle in the Port of Xenicium into the Turkes handes: and againe, the Turke resigned and graunted vnto them, two miles euery way about the Territoire of Zara and other their Iurisdictions therabout, and that the Venetians for Dalmacia and tereyne other pieces about Zara, should yearly aunder an certaine tribute to the said Turke.

In

Of Saracens and Turkes. 144

In March this yeare the Moores whom Don Iohn de Austria permitted vpon their humble sute still to inhabit in Tunyce, by the egging and procurement of Radamane Viceroy of Algiera, entred into conspyracie and denise, how to surpise and winne the new Fort that the Spaniards had there lately made, against whom Salazara was commaunded by Sig. Serbellane to go with a thousand footemen, which put the Moorish Judges to flight, and slue of them 1200.

Three Shippes were sent to Charles the ix. Kinge of Fraunce, laden with great Horses, Lyons, Lyberds, and other Prezentes. Whiche colourable curtisie vnder the cloake of glosing flatterie, it is thought the Turke used, the rather to obtayne the Kinges goodwill and consent that he might winter his Gallies in the Port Colonensis. But hearing that the King was departed this yse before their coming, one of them returned to Constantinople with speede, to intimate to the Turke their matter, the French Kinges death, and further to know his pleasure what they should doe.

In June the Emperour and the Turke concluded a peace for five yeares to come.

In Iulie, 300 Turkes landing in Calabria to fetch the fresh water and filch some other botties, were snatched by euery one and either slaine or taken.

Vpon the Seas about Tunyce were seene 350 Saile of the Turkes, whose intent and meaning was (as very shortly after they brought it to passe) to recover and winne the new Fort which Sarraglion builded, together with Goletta and other Places there. With whom also a mighty rabblement of traiterous Mozes about Algiera, Tripolis & Zerbice toynd side: which dispossessed thence the Spanish garrisons, to the great furtherance of their deuillish purposes and to the lamentable griefe of all Christendome, considering what a small way they haue from

A breefe Chronycle

from thence into Spaine & to into the rest of other Chri-
stian Realmes, vntill the good and gracious prouidence
of our God qualesse and as with a snaffle reine this
raging Beaste and bloudy Tyrant, the common
robber of all the world from further inuasion,
which he graciously graunt for his mer-
cy sake through the mediation of
his Sonne Christ our Lord
and onely Sauour
Amen.

FINIS.



PRINTED AT

London by William How, for

Abraham Weale, dwelling in

Paules Churchyard, at the signe

of the Lambe.

1575.